DITA Version 1.1 Language Specification

Committee Specification 01, 31 May 2007

- **Document identifier:**
    DITA_v1.1LangSpecificationIssue03
- **Locations:**
    This Version:
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CS01/langspec/ditaref-type.html
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CS01/langspec/ditaref-type.pdf
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CS01/langspec/langspec.zip (DITA source; see ditaref-type.ditamap)
    Previous Version:
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CD02/langspec/ditaref-type.html
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CD02/langspec/ditaref-type.pdf
    Latest Version:
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/langspec/ditaref-type.html
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/langspec/ditaref-type.pdf
    http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/langspec/langspec.zip (DITA source; see ditaref-type.ditamap)
- **Technical Committee:**
    OASIS Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) TC
    Chair(s):
    Don Day
    Editor(s):
    Michael Priestley
    Robert D. Anderson
    JoAnn Hackos
- **Related Work:**
    This specification replaces or supercedes:
    OASIS DITA Version 1.0 Language Specification
    This specification is related to:
    OASIS DITA Version 1.1 Architectural Specification Committee Specification
    (*http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CS01/archspec/archspec.html)*
    OASIS DITA Version 1.1 DTDs Committee Specification (*http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CS01/dtd/ditadtd.zip)*
    OASIS DITA Version 1.1 Schemas Committee Specification
    (*http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.1/CS01/schema/ditaschema.zip)*
    Declared XML Namespace(s):
    [none]
- **Abstract:**

    The DITA 1.1 Language Specification describes each element in version 1.1 of the DITA Standard.

- **Status:**

For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the Intellectual Property Rights section of the Technical Committee web page (*http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/dita/ipr.php*).

The non-normative errata page for this specification is located at *http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/tc_home.php?wg_abbrev=dita*.

Notices

Contents

31 May 2007

Chapter 1. Introduction

The design of the Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) is based on deriving multiple information types, or topic types, from a common, generic topic. This language reference describes the elements that comprise the topic DTD and its initial, information-typed descendents: concept, reference, task, and glossentry. It also describes the DITA map DTD and its current specialization (bookmap), as well as various topic and map based DITA domains.

This specification describes specific details of each element in the OASIS DITA language. The separate DITA Architectural Specification includes detailed information about DITA specialization, when to use each topic type, how topics and maps interact, details of complex behaviors such as conref and conditional processing, and many other best practices for working with DITA.

The elements that make up the DITA design represent a set of different authoring concerns, each of which is grouped into its own chapter. Major sections include:
- The main components of a topic, concept, reference, task, document,
- The main components of a glossentry document (new for DITA 1.1),
- The common elements available for creating content within the body of a topic,
- The elements that make up the two types of tables in DITA,
- The elements contained in the prolog of a topic (many of these also appear in the topicmeta in a map),
- The elements contained in the related-links part of a topic,
- Elements that appear in many contexts, but do not fit into specific categories,
- Elements that are available for further specialization,
- Domain specializations of topic elements that represent different subject domains,
- Elements that make up a DITA map, followed by the "mapgroup" domain specialization,
- The bookmap specialization (new for DITA 1.1),
- The xNAL domain for describing author information (based on the extensible Name and Address Language standard, and also new for DITA 1.1),
- The DITAVAL DTD for flagging and filtering content (formalized for DITA 1.1),
- and commonly referenced descriptions

In addition to glossentry topics, bookmap, the xNAL domain, and the formalized DITAVAL format, DITA 1.1 also includes a new indexing domain, clarifications to the image and object elements, new props and base attributes for attribute specialization, and several new elements:
- abstract
- data and data-about
- foreign and unknown
- index-base

DITA 1.1 includes a new "dir" attribute to aid in localization. This attribute, along with other localization attributes, is now available on nearly every DITA element. In addition, common metadata and id attributes that were available on many elements in DITA 1.0 are now available on nearly every element.

Terminology

The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" are to be interpreted as described in [RFC2119].

1

Normative References

[RFC2119]

S. Bradner, Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels, http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.

Chapter 2. Topic elements

Use the generic topic structure for untyped topics. While much of the DITA architecture is built upon generic topics, it is generally better to use more specific information types (such as concept, task, or reference) when they are available. For an answer to the question "What are topics?" and more details on when to use different information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

topic

The <topic> element is the top-level DITA element for a single-subject topic or article. Other top-level DITA elements that are more content-specific are <concept>, <task>, <reference>, and <glossary>.

To support applications that are namespace-aware, DITA DTDs and Schemas provide the following namespaced declarations for topic, and for topic-level elements derived from topic:

```
ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.0"
xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
```

In DTDs, the "ditaarch" prefix is parameterized to enable future specialization.

Example

```
<topic id="topic">
 <title>Some little topic</title>
 <body>
  <p>Here's a <b><i>cute</i></b>,
  <b>little</b> topic.</p>
  <ul>
   <li>Some item</li>
   <li>Another item</li>
  </ul>
 </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (body) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic or concept or task or reference or glossentry) *(any number)*)
topic	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (body) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic) *(any number)*)
task	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (body) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic) *(any number)*)
reference	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (body) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic) *(any number)*)
concept	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (body) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic) *(any number)*)
glossary	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (body) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita, topic, concept, task, reference
topic	topic
task	topic
concept	topic
reference	topic
glossary	topic, concept

Inheritance:

- topic/topic

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http:// dita.oasis-open.org/ architecture/ 2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

title

The <title> element contains a heading or label for the main parts of a topic, including the topic as a whole, its sections and examples, and its labelled content, such as figures and tables. Beginning with DITA 1.1, the element may also be used to provide a title for a map.

Example

```
<topic id="topic">
 <title>Some little topic</title>
 <body>
  <p>Some discourse.</p>
 </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, fig, figgroup, table, map, bookmap
map	data, fig, figgroup, table, map
ditabase	data, fig, figgroup, table, topic, section, example, linklist, concept, task, reference, refsyn, syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment
topic	data, fig, figgroup, table, topic, section, example, linklist, syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment
task	data, fig, figgroup, table, topic, section, example, linklist, task, syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment
concept	data, fig, figgroup, table, topic, section, example, linklist, concept, syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment
reference	data, fig, figgroup, table, topic, section, example, linklist, reference, refsyn, syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment
glossary	data, fig, figgroup, table, topic, section, example, linklist, concept, syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

- topic/title

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

titlealts

The alternate title element (<titlealts>) is optional, but can occur after the topic title. Two elements can be inserted as sub-elements of <titlealts>: navigation title <navtitle> and search title <searchtitle>.

When your DITA topic is transformed to XHTML, the <searchtitle> element is used to create a title element at the top of the resulting XHTML file. This title may differ from the first level heading that shows in the main browser window. In HTML output, the <navtitle> may be used to create navigation panels when your DITA topics are part of an HTML-based help or information system. The design intent is to enable navigation for HTML Help and Eclipse help systems.

When the <titlealts> element is absent, the title element is used for all purposes.

Example

```
<task id="progexample">
   <title>Example of Required Programming</title>
      <titlealts><navtitle>Programming Example</navtitle></titlealts>
   <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((navtitle) *(optional)* then (searchtitle) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic, concept, task, reference
topic	topic
task	topic, task
concept	topic, concept
reference	topic, reference
glossary	topic, concept

Inheritance:

- topic/titlealts

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

navtitle

The navigation title (<navtitle>) element is one of a set of alternate titles that can be included inside the <titlealts> element. This navigation title may differ from the first level heading that shows in the main browser window. Use <navtitle> when the actual title of the topic isn't appropriate for use in navigation panes or online contents (for example, because the actual title is too long).

Example

```
<task id=progexample">
 <title>Publishing a DITA information set in PDF</title>
  <titlealts><navtitle>Publishing in PDF</navtitle></titlealts>
 <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	titlealts

Inheritance:

- topic/navtitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

searchtitle

When your DITA topic is transformed to XHTML, the <searchtitle> element is used to create a title element at the top of the resulting HTML file. This title is normally used in search result summaries by some search engines, such as that in Eclipse (http://eclipse.org); if not set, the XHTML's title element defaults to the source topic's title content (which may not be as well optimized for search summaries)

Example

```
<task id="progexample">
 <title>Programming Example</title>
  <titlealts><searchtitle>Example of Required Programming</searchtitle></titlealts>
 <taskbody> . . . </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Topic output
> The abstract is being used to provide more complex content. The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract. The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.

Preview/summary output
> The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

Example: abstract with block-level short description

```
<abstract><p>The abstract is being used to provide more complex content.</p>
 <shortdesc>The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.</shortdesc>
<p>The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.</p>
</abstract>
```

Topic output

> The abstract is being used to provide more complex content.

> The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

> The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.

Preview/summary output
> The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

Example: abstract with multiple short descriptions

```
<abstract>The abstract is being used to provide more complex content.
 <shortdesc>The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.</shortdesc>
 <p>The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.</p>
 <shortdesc>There can be more than one shortdesc.</shortdesc>
</abstract>
```

Topic output

> The abstract is being used to provide more complex content. The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract.

> The abstract can put text around the shortdesc.

> There can be more than one shortdesc.

Preview/summary output
> The shortdesc must be directly contained by the abstract. There can be more than one shortdesc.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or shortdesc) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic, concept, task, reference
topic	topic
task	topic, task

Doctype	Parents
concept	topic, concept
reference	topic, reference
glossary	topic, concept

Inheritance:

- topic/abstract

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

shortdesc

The short description (<shortdesc>) element occurs between the topic title and the topic body, as the initial paragraph-like content of a topic, or it can be embedded in an abstract element. The short description, which represents the purpose or theme of the topic, is also intended to be used as a link preview and for searching. When used within a DITA map, the short description of the <topicref> can be used to override the short description in the topic.

Use the <shortdesc> element when the first paragraph of topic content is simple enough to be suitable for use as a link preview or for summaries. Otherwise use the element instead to provide richer content around the <shortdesc>. See the "abstract" on page 9 description for more details on the behavior of shortdesc in an abstract.

While inclusion of the <shortdesc> element is not mandated by DITA or the tools, it is recommended that topics contain this element. In cases where a topic contains only one paragraph, then it is preferable to include this text in the <shortdesc> and leave the topic body empty.

The short description should be a single, concise paragraph containing one or two sentences of no more than 50 words.

Type	Recommended content
Task	
	The short description should explain what the task information helps users accomplish, the benefits of the task, or the purpose of the task. Do not simply repeat the title. Try to include information that will help users understand when the task is appropriate or why the task is necessary. Avoid stating the obvious, such as "You can use XYZ to do A" as the only statement in the short description for Task A. In some cases, add more information about why the task is beneficial.
	Do not use sentence fragments. Use complete sentences. Avoid starting short descriptions with phrases such as "This topic describes . . . ." or "This topic is about . . . ."

Type	Recommended content
Concept	Introduce the concept and provide a concise answer to the question "What is this?" and in some cases "Why do I care about this?" If the concept is unfamiliar, you can start with a brief definition. Avoid using the short description to lead in or build up to a topic. The short description paragraph should contain the main point of the conceptual topic. The concept short description should clearly apply to a concept. Avoid turning the concept topic into a task. Do not simply repeat the title. Do not use sentence fragments. Use complete sentences. Avoid starting short descriptions with phrases such as "This topic describes . . . ." or "This topic is about . . . ."
Reference	Briefly describe what the reference item does, what it is, or what it is used for. In most cases, use a complete sentence. You can use a sentence fragment only for a topic that is very short, such as an API topic and each of its subtopics. Use consistent phrasing across libraries and information centers so that your information can be seamlessly integrated with another product's information.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta
ditabase	topic, abstract, concept, task, reference, glossdef
topic	topic, abstract
task	topic, abstract, task
concept	topic, abstract, concept
reference	topic, abstract, reference
glossary	topic, abstract, concept, glossdef

Inheritance:

"- topic/shortdesc " when used in topics, and "- map/shortdesc " when used in maps.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

body

The <body> element is the container for the main content of a <topic>.

Example

```
<topic>
<title>...</title>
<prolog>...</prolog>
<body> ... ... </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or required-cleanup or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or section or example) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	topic

Inheritance:

- topic/body

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

section

The <section> element represents an organizational division in a topic. Sections are used to organize subsets of information that are directly related to the topic. For example, the titles **Reference Syntax**, **Example** and **Properties** might represent section-level discourse within a topic about a command-line process—the content in each section relates uniquely to the subject of that topic. Multiple sections within a single topic do not represent a hierarchy, but rather peer divisions of that topic. Sections cannot be nested. A section may have an optional title.

Example

```
<reference id="reference">
 <title>Copy Command</title>
 <refbody>
  <section>
   <title>Purpose</title>
   This little command copies
   things.
  </section>
 </refbody>
</reference>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or title or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	body, conbody, refbody
topic	body
task	body
concept	body, conbody
reference	body, refbody
glossary	body, conbody

Inheritance:

- topic/section

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

example

The <example> element is a section with the specific role of containing examples that illustrate or support the current topic. The <example> element has the same content model as <section>.

DITA uses <example> to contain both discussion and sample code or outputs. Hence, in a DITA topic, to represent programming code and results within the discussion in an example, use the <codeblock> and <systemoutput> elements within the example element. For lines of text, use the <lines> element. For pre-formatted text such as email headers, use the <pre> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or title or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	body, conbody, taskbody, refbody
topic	body
task	body, taskbody
concept	body, conbody
reference	body, refbody
glossary	body, conbody

Inheritance:

- topic/example

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

related-links

The related information links of a topic (<related-links> element) are stored in a special section following the body of the topic. After a topic is processed into it final output form, the related links are usually displayed at the end of the topic, although some Web-based help systems might display them in a separate navigation frame.

Processing notes:

1. Prerequisite links are an exception (that is, in which *importance="required"* and the role is compatible–not ancestor/parent/child/descendant/next). Implementations may (but need not) sort these after the <shortdesc> (all topics) or after the <prereq> section (for tasks).

2. PDF output typically ignores hierarchical links, for example ancestor/parent/child/descendant/next/previous/sibling, although it may include some child links to produce summaries at the start of chapters.

3. Links not in a <linklist> will be sorted on output based on type, role, and importance.

4. The value of the *format* attribute defaults to "dita" unless the attribute *scope="external"*, when format is assumed to be not-dita.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(link or linklist or linkpool) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic, concept, task, reference, glossentry
topic	topic
task	topic, task
concept	topic, concept

31 May 2007

Doctype	Parents
reference	topic, reference
glossary	topic, concept, glossentry

Inheritance:

- topic/related-links

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See "The role attribute" on page 482 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 3. Concept elements

DITA concept topics answer "What is..." questions. Use the concept topic to introduce the background or overview information for tasks or reference topics. The concept topic has the restriction that following a section or example, only other sections or examples are permitted as content. For more details on when to use concept and other information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

concept

The <concept> element is the top-level element for a topic that answers the question "what is?" Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface. Often, a concept is an extended definition of a major abstraction such as a process or function. It might also have an example or a graphic, but generally the structure of a concept is fairly simple.

Example

```
<concept id="concept">
 <title>Introduction to Bird Calling</title>
 <shortdesc>If you wish to attract more birds to your Acme Bird Feeder,
learn the art of bird calling. Bird calling is an efficient way
to alert more birds to the presence of your bird feeder.</shortdesc>
 <conbody>
   <p>Bird calling requires learning:</p>
   <ul>
    <li>Popular and classical bird songs</li>
    <li>How to whistle like a bird</li>
   </ul>
 </conbody>
</concept>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (conbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic or concept or task or reference or glossentry) *(any number)*)
concept	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (conbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (concept) *(any number)*)
glossary	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (conbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita, topic, concept, task, reference
concept	concept

Inheritance:

- topic/topic concept/concept

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

conbody

The <conbody> element is the main body-level element for a concept. Like the <body> element of a general <topic>, <conbody> allows paragraphs, lists, and other elements as well as sections and examples. But <conbody> has a constraint that a section or an example can be followed only by other sections or examples.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, concept, glossary	((p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or required-cleanup or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)* then (section or example) *(any number)*)

31 May 2007

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, concept, glossary	concept

Inheritance:

- topic/body concept/conbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 4. Reference elements

Use the reference elements to describe regular features of sets of things, most commonly the commands in a programming language. However, this format is also suitable for recipes, bibliographies, catalogues, and similar collections of structured descriptive prose. For more details on when to use reference and other information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

reference

The <reference> element defines a top-level container for a reference topic. Reference topics document programming constructs or facts about a product. Examples of reference topics include language elements, class descriptions, commands, functions, statements, protocols, types, declarators, operands, and API information, which provide quick access to facts, but no explanation of concepts or procedures. Reference topics have the same high-level structure as any other topic type, with a title, short description, and body. Within the body, reference topics are typically organized into one or more sections, property lists, and tables. The reference topic type provides general rules that apply to all kinds of reference information, using elements like <refsyn> for syntax or signatures, and <properties> for lists of properties and values.

Example

```
<reference id="refexample">
 <title>A reference topic/title>
 <refbody>
  <refsyn>Describe command or api syntax here, possibly
  using &lt;synph> or &lt;syntax> markup for explicit
  definition of syntax or prototype construction.
  </refsyn>
  <section>
   <title>Some section title</title>
  </section>
  <properties>
   <property>
    <proptype>type</proptype>
    <propvalue>value</propvalue>
    <propdesc>description</propdesc>
   </property>
  </properties>
 </refbody>
</reference>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (refbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic or concept or task or reference or glossentry) *(any number)*)
reference	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (refbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (reference) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita, topic, concept, task, reference
reference	reference

31 May 2007

Inheritance:

- topic/topic reference/reference

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http:// dita.oasis-open.org/ architecture/ 2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

refbody

The <refbody> element is a container for the main content of the reference topic. Reference topics limit the body structure to tables (both simple and standard), property lists, syntax sections, and generic sections and examples, in any sequence or number.

Reference topics represent the kind of information that users typically consult to understand programming objects, statements, commands, configuration file options, recipes, terminological descriptions, and so forth.

Example

See "reference" on page 23.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((section or refsyn or example or table or simpletable or properties or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	reference

Inheritance:

- topic/body reference/refbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

refsyn

The <refsyn> element is a special section inside a reference topic. The section often contains syntax or signature content (for example, a command-line utility's calling syntax, or an API's signature). The <refsyn> contains a brief, possibly diagrammatic description of the subject's interface or high-level structure.

Example

See "reference" on page 23.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or title or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	refbody

Inheritance:

- topic/section reference/refsyn

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

properties

The <properties> element gives a list of properties for the subject of the current topic, for example whether a class is public or protected. Each property can include the type, value, and a description. The typical rendering is usually in a table-like format. To represent multiple values for a type, just create additional property elements and use only the <propvalue> element (and <propdesc> when needed) for each successive value.

```
<properties>
  <prophead>
  <proptypehd>Visual Element</proptypehd>
  <propvaluehd>Value</propvaluehd>
  <propdeschd>Implication</propdeschd>
```

```
  <property>
    <proptype>color</proptype>
    <propvalue>red</propvalue>
    <propdesc>depicts anger</propdesc>
  </property>
  <property>
    <propvalue>green</propvalue>
    <propdesc>depicts permission</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((prophead) *(optional)* then (property) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	refbody

Inheritance:

- topic/simpletable reference/properties

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The values are totaled and made a percent. For example:
	
	`relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"`
	
	causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.
	
	`relcolwidth="90* 150*"`
	
	causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking. Columns are identified by a space-delimited list of numbers (for example: 1 3).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

prophead

The prophead element supports regular headings for the properties element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((proptypehd) *(optional)* then (propvaluehd) *(optional)* then (propdeschd) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	properties

Inheritance:

- topic/sthead reference/prophead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

proptypehd

The proptypehd element supports regular headings for the type column of a properties table.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	prophead

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/proptypehd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

propvaluehd

The propvaluehd element supports regular headings for the value column of a properties table.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	prophead

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propvaluehd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

propdeschd

The propdeschd element supports regular headings for the description column of a properties table.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

31 May 2007

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	prophead

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propdeschd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

property

The <property> element represents a property of the current topic's subject. For example, if the current topic is a class, the property might show that the class is protected rather than public. It contains three optional elements: type, value, and description.

Example

See "properties" on page 26.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	((proptype) *(optional)* then (propvalue) *(optional)* then (propdesc) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	properties

Inheritance:

- topic/strow reference/property

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

proptype

The proptype element describes the type of property.

Example

See "properties" on page 26.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	property

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/proptype

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

propvalue

The <propvalue> element indicates the value or values for the current property type. You can put values in separate rows if they need separate descriptions, and just leave the <proptype> element blank.

Example

See "properties" on page 26.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	property

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propvalue

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

propdesc

The <propdesc> element is used to provide a short description of the property type and its listed values (or just the value).

Example

See "properties" on page 26.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, reference	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, reference	property

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry reference/propdesc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 5. Task elements

Task topics answer "How do I?" questions, and have a well-defined structure that describes how to complete a procedure to accomplish a specific goal. Use the task topic to describe the steps of a particular task, or to provide an overview of a higher-level task. The task topic includes sections for describing the context, prerequisites, actual steps, expected results, example, and expected next steps for a task. For more details on when to use task and other information types, please refer to the DITA architectural specification.

task

The <task> element is the top-level element for a task topic. Tasks are the main building blocks for task-oriented user assistance. They generally provide step-by-step instructions that will enable a user to perform a task. A task answers the question of "how to?" by telling the user precisely what to do and the order in which to do it. Tasks have the same high-level structure as other topics, with a title, short description and body.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
  </context>
  <steps>
   <step><cmd>Open...</cmd></step>
  </steps>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (taskbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (topic or concept or task or reference or glossentry) *(any number)*)
task	((title) then (titlealts) *(optional)* then (shortdesc or abstract) *(optional)* then (prolog) *(optional)* then (taskbody) *(optional)* then (related-links) *(optional)* then (task) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita, topic, concept, task, reference
task	task

Inheritance:

- topic/topic task/task

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

taskbody

The <taskbody> element is the main body-level element inside a task topic. A task body has a very specific structure, with the following elements in this order: <prereq>, <context>, <steps>, <result>, <example> and <postreq>. Each of the body sections are optional.

Example

See "task" on page 37.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((prereq) *(optional)* then (context) *(optional)* then (steps or steps-unordered) *(optional)* then (result) *(optional)* then (example) *(optional)* then (postreq) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	task

Inheritance:

- topic/body task/taskbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

prereq

The pre-requisite (<prereq>) section of a task should document things the user needs to know or do before starting the current task. Prerequisite links will be placed in a list after the related-links section; on output the <prereq> links from the related-links section are added to the <prereq> section.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <prereq>Before creating a new SQLJ file, you must
  log in to the SQLJ server.</prereq>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/prereq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

context

The <context> section of a task provides background information for the task. This information helps the user understand what the purpose of the task is and what they will gain by completing the task. This section should be brief and does not replace or recreate a concept topic on the same subject, although the context section may include some conceptual information.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
</context>
</taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/context

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

steps

The <steps> section of a task provides the main content of the task topic. The task is described as a series of steps that the user must follow to accomplish the task. One or more <steps> elements is required inside the <steps> section.

Two or more steps appear as an ordered list. A single step appears as a paragraph. If all of the contained steps are simple (that is, have no more than a <cmd> element each) then the step list should default to compact. Otherwise it should be formatted as uncompact (with blank lines between each step on output).

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
 <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.</context>
  <steps>
   <step>
    <cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd>
   </step>
   <step>
    <cmd>Enter the first query statement.</cmd>
```

```
      </step>
    </steps>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((step) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody

Inheritance:

- topic/ol task/steps

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

steps-unordered

Like the <steps> element, the <steps-unordered> section of a task provides the main content of the task topic, but particularly for cases in which the order of steps may vary from one situation to another. One or more steps is required inside the <steps-unordered> section.

Two or more steps appear as an unordered list. A single step appears as a paragraph. If all of the contained steps are simple (that is, have no more than a <cmd> element each) then the list should default to compact. Otherwise it should be formatted as uncompact (with blank lines between each step on output).

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.</context>
  <steps-unordered>
   <step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>
  </steps-unordered>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

31 May 2007

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((step) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody

Inheritance:

- topic/ul task/steps-unordered

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

step

The <step> element represents an action that a user must follow to accomplish a task. Each step in a task must contain a command <cmd> element which describes the particular action the user must do to accomplish the overall task. The step element can also contain information <info>, substeps <substeps>, tutorial information <tutorialinfo>, a step example <stepxmp>, choices <choices> or a stepresult <stepresult>, although these are optional.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
<title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
<taskbody>
<context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
</context>
<steps>
<step>
 <cmd>Select <menucascade><uicontrol>File</uicontrol><uicontrol>New</uicontrol></menucascade>.</cmd>
 <info>New files are created with default values based on a standard template.</info>
</step>
</steps>
</taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(cmd then (info or substeps or tutorialinfo or stepxmp or choicetable or choices) *(any number)* then (stepresult) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	steps, steps-unordered

Inheritance:

- topic/li task/step

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	Describes whether the current step or substep is optional or required. Output processors may (but need not) highlight steps that are optional or required.	optional | required | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

cmd

The command (<cmd>) element is required as the first element inside a <step>. It provides the active voice instruction to the user for completing the step, and should not be more than one sentence. If the step needs additional explanation, this can follow the <cmd> element inside an <info > element.

Example

```
<step><cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd></step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step, substep

Inheritance:

- topic/ph task/cmd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

info

The information element (<info>) occurs inside a <step> element to provide additional information about the step.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Type a name for the widget.</cmd>
<info>The widget name is created when you configure the widget
in the Widget Configuration Dialog. It is not an actual class
name or file name, just a label for the widget as used in this
application.</info>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step, substep

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/info

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

substeps

The <substeps> element allows you to break a step down into a series of separate actions, and should be used only if necessary. Try to describe the steps of a task in a single level of steps. If you need to use more than one level of substep nesting, you should probably rewrite the task to simplify it.

Example

```
<substeps>
<substep><cmd>Hold pencil in a steady, level position.</cmd></substep>
<substep><cmd>Turn handle until resistance diminishes.</cmd>
<info>Note: initially, it may be somewhat difficult to turn the handle if
pencil has never been sharpened before.</info></substep>
<substep><cmd>To determine if pencil is sharp, remove it from the sharpener
and inspect the tip.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(substep) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step

Inheritance:

- topic/ol task/substeps

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

substep

A <substep> element has the same structure as a <step>, except that it does not allow lists of choices or substeps within it, in order to prevent unlimited nesting of steps.

Example

See "substeps" on page 47.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(cmd then (info or tutorialinfo or stepxmp) *(any number)* then (stepresult) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	substeps

Inheritance:

- topic/li task/substep

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	Describes whether the current step or substep is optional or required. Output processors may (but need not) highlight steps that are optional or required.	optional | required | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

stepxmp

The step example (<stepxmp>) element is used to illustrate a step of a task. The example can be a couple of words, or an entire paragraph.

Example

```
<step>
 <cmd>Type a name for the widget.</cmd>
 <stepxmp>For example, <userinput>mywidget</userinput></stepxmp>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step, substep

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/stepxmp

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

choicetable

The <choicetable> element contains a series of optional choices available within a step of a task.

By default, the highlighting of the choice column is bold. To change the highlighting, set the keycol attribute of the ChoiceTable tag to 0 (zero).

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
<substeps>
<substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
<substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
</substeps>
<choicetable>
<chhead>
<choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
<chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
</chhead>
<chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
<chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
<chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
<chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
</choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((chhead) (optional) then (chrow) (one or more))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step

Inheritance:

- topic/simpletable task/choicetable

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The values are totaled and made a percent. For example:
	
	`relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"`
	
	causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.
	
	`relcolwidth="90* 150*"`
	
	causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. By default, the first column is used. To indicate that no column in the table is the key column, set the attribute to 0.	NMTOKEN	1	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking. Columns are identified by a space-delimited list of numbers (for example: 1 3).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

chhead

The <chhead> element is a container inside the <choicetable> element that provides specific heading text to override the default **Options** and **Description** headings. The <chhead> element contains both a <choptionhd> and <chdeschd> element as a pair.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
 </substeps>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
```

```
    <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((choptionhd) then (chdeschd))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	choicetable

Inheritance:

- topic/sthead task/chhead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

choptionhd

The <choptionhd> element provides a specific label for the list of options that a user chooses from to accomplish a step. The default label for options is **Option**.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>And this happens</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chhead

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/choptionhd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

chdeschd

The <chdeschd> option provides a specific label for the list of descriptions of options that a user must choose to accomplish a step of a task. The default label overridden by <chdeschd> is **Description**.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chhead

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/chdeschd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

chrow

The <chrow> element is a container inside the <choicetable> element. The <chrow> element contains both a <choption> and <chdesc> element as a pair.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
 </substeps>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>Or Else this</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
  <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
```

```
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
  <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((choption) then (chdesc))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	choicetable

Inheritance:

- topic/strow task/chrow

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

choption

The <choption> element describes an option that a user could choose to accomplish a step of a task. In a user interface, for example, this might be the name of radio button.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <choicetable>
  <chhead>
   <choptionhd>Do something</choptionhd>
   <chdeschd>And this happens</chdeschd>
  </chhead>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
     <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chrow

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/choption

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

chdesc

The <chdesc> element is a description of an option that a user chooses while performing a step to accomplish a task. It explains why the user would choose that option, and might explain the result of the choice when it is not immediately obvious.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Then this</cmd>
 <substeps>
  <substep importance="optional"><cmd>which is done by doing this</cmd></substep>
  <substep importance="required"><cmd>and then this.</cmd></substep>
 </substeps>
 <choicetable>
  <chrow><choption>Do this</choption>
     <chdesc>and this will happen</chdesc></chrow>
```

```
  <chrow><choption>Do that</choption>
      <chdesc>and that will happen</chdesc></chrow>
 </choicetable>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	chrow

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry task/chdesc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

choices

The <choices> element contains a list of <choice> elements. It is used when the user will need to choose one of several actions while performing the steps of a task.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Choose a server.</cmd>
<choices>
<choice>If you have a remote server you want to test on, type the
IP address or hostname of the server here.</choice>
<choice>If you want to do local testing, just type localhost.</choice>
</choices>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	((choice) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step

Inheritance:

- topic/ul task/choices

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

choice

Each <choice> element describes one way that the user could accomplish the current step.

Example

```
<step><cmd>Choose a server.</cmd>
  <choices>
    <choice>If you have a remote server you want to test on, type the
IP address or hostname of the server here.</choice>
    <choice>If you want to do local testing, just type localhost.</choice>
  </choices>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or itemgroup or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

31 May 2007

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	choices

Inheritance:

- topic/li task/choice

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

stepresult

The <stepresult> element provides information on the expected outcome of a step. If a user interface is being documented, the outcome could describe a dialog box opening, or the appearance of a progress indicator. Step results are useful to assure a user that they are on track, but should not be used for every step, as this quickly becomes tedious.

Example

```
<steps>
 <step>
  <cmd importance="urgent">Once you have the water place it in the microwave.</cmd>
  <info>Try not to spill any, as water is very wet.</info>
 </step>
 <step importance="required">
  <cmd>Start the Microwave.</cmd>
  <stepxmp>As an example, push the <b>Start</b> button</stepxmp>
  <stepresult>The Microwave starts running. You should hear it humming.</stepresult>
 </step>
 <step importance="optional">
  <cmd>Once the water begins to boil, stop the Microwave.</cmd>
 </step>
</steps>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step, substep

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/stepresult

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tutorialinfo

The tutorial info (<tutorialinfo>) element contains additional information that is useful when the task is part of a tutorial.

Example

```
<steps>
 <step>
  <cmd>Do this</cmd>
  <tutorialinfo>In your editor, open the first element and click on
  the dialog.</tutorialinfo>
 </step>
 <step>
  <cmd>Do that</cmd>
  <tutorialinfo>Move the framulator into the foobar box.</tutorialinfo>
 </step>
</steps>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	step, substep

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup task/tutorialinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

result

The <result> element describes the expected outcome for the task as a whole.

Note: If this is the outcome of a specific step, put this in the <stepresult> element instead.

Example

```
<task id="sqlj">
 <titleCreating an SQLJ file</title>
 <taskbody>
  <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you need to create a new SQLJ file.
  You cannot add #sqlj statements directly in the Source pane of the
  Workbench.</context>
  <result>The SQLJ file is successfully created when the SQLJ server
  displays the "File Created" dialog.</result>
 </taskbody>
</task>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/result

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

postreq

The <postreq> element describes steps or tasks that the user should do after the successful completion of the current task. It is often supported by links to the next task or tasks in the <related-links> section.

Example

```
<postreq>Notify the proctor upon completing this self-test.</postreq>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, task	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, task	taskbody

Inheritance:

- topic/section task/postreq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 6. Glossentry elements

Use the glossentry topic type to define glossary terms. Each glossentry topic should define a single sense of a term. The current OASIS glossentry type is an initial implementation intended to support minimal terminology information; more terminology management capabilities may be added in future releases.

glossentry

The <glossentry> element defines a single sense of a glossary term. The expected book processing is to sort and group the glossary entries based on the localized term so a back-of-the-book glossary can contain a collated list of terms with the definitions of the senses of the terms indented under the terms. The glossary can have a different organization in different languages depending on the translation of the terms. One possible online processing is to associate a hotspot for mentions of terms in <term> elements and display the definition on hover or click. Glossary entries for different term senses can be reused independently of one another.

Example

```
<glossentry id="ddl">
    <glossterm>Data Definition Language</glossterm>
    <glossdef>A formal language used for defining database schemas....</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, glossary	((glossterm) then (glossdef) then (related-links) *(optional)* then (no-topic-nesting) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	dita, topic, concept, task, reference

Inheritance:

- topic/topic concept/concept glossentry/glossentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	This ID enables topics to be referenced uniquely by topicrefs in DITA maps.	ID		Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a topic that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http:// dita.oasis-open.org/ architecture/ 2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(topic ui-d) (topic hi-d) (topic pr-d) (topic sw-d) (topic ut-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

glossdef

The <glossdef> element specifies the definition of one sense of a term. If a term has multiple senses, create a separate <glossentry> topic to define each sense.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or shortdesc) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, glossary	glossentry

31 May 2007

Inheritance:

- topic/abstract concept/abstract glossentry/glossdef

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

glossterm

The <glossterm> element specifies the preferred term associated with a definition of a sense. If the same term has multiple senses, create a separate <glossentry> topic for each sense.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, glossary	glossentry

Inheritance:

- topic/title concept/title glossentry/glossterm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 7. Body elements

The body elements support the most common types of content authoring for topics: paragraphs, lists, phrases, figures, and other common types of exhibits in a document.

p

A paragraph element (<p>) is a block of text containing a single main idea.

Example

```
<p>
It is probable that <q>temporary</q> or <q>new</q> stars, as these
wonderful apparitions are called, really are <term>conflagrations</term>;
not in the sense of a bonfire or a burning house or city, but in that of
a sudden eruption of <i>inconceivable</i> heat and light, such as would
result from the stripping off the shell of an encrusted sun or the crashing
together of two mighty orbs flying through space with a hundred times
the velocity of the swiftest cannon-shot.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/p

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

note

A <note> element contains information, differentiated from the main text, which expands on or calls attention to a particular point.

Tip: Variant types of note (tip, caution, danger, restriction, etc.) can be indicated through values selected on the type attribute. This note is typed as a "tip."

Example

This example:

```
<note type="tip">Thinking of a seashore, green meadow, or cool
mountain overlook can help you to relax and be more
patient.</note>
```

produces this result:

Tip: Thinking of a seashore, green meadow, or cool mountain overlook can help you to relax and be more patient.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/note

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Defines the type of a note. For example, if the note is a tip, the word **Tip** is used to draw the reader's attention to it. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	(note | tip | fastpath | restriction | important | remember | attention | caution | danger | other | -dita-use-conref-target)		No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
othertype	Indicates an alternate note type, when the type is not available in the type attribute value list. This value is used as the user-provided note title when the type attribute value is set to "other."	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

ph

The phrase (<ph>) element is used to organize content for reuse or conditional processing (for example, when part of a paragraph applies to a particular audience). It can be used by specializations of DITA to create semantic markup for content at the phrase level, which then allows (but does not require) specific processing or formatting.

Example

```
This was not changed. <ph rev="v5r2">This was updated.</ph> This was not.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
database, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, organizationname
map	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Doctype	Parents
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

- topic/ph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

keyword

The <keyword> element identifies a keyword or token, such as a single value from an enumerated list, the name of a command or parameter, product name, or a lookup key for a message.

"Keyword" means any text that has a unique or key-like value. For example, a product name. Where there is a element that has a better meaning for what you are describing, use that element. The keyword element is a generic element; use it when no other element applies. The keyword element can also be used to contain reusable text.

Specific markup recommendations:
- Use apiname for API names and cmdname for command names.
- Term should be used for inline paragraph definitions; to indicate what you're defining.
- PH should be used for general phrases; when you think that keyword is not appropriate.
- Inside syntax diagrams and syntax phrases, use kwd to indicate a programming keyword.
- In metadata, a keyword is used to create additional XHTML metadata.

Specialized elements derived from <keyword> may also have extended processing, such as different formatting or automatic indexing.

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any <keyword> or <indexterm> elements in the <keywords> metadata element are placed in the Web page metadata. In addition, any index terms in this context are also used for supported index processing (for example, for print versions).

```
<p>The <keyword>assert</keyword> pragma statement allows messages to be passed
to the emulator, pre-compiler, etc..</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(text data or tm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, linktext, searchtitle, person, organization, summary, printlocation, bookpartno, booknumber, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as, organizationname, otherinfo, addressdetails, locality, localityname, administrativearea, thoroughfare, emailaddress, url
map	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, linktext, searchtitle, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

- topic/keyword

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

xref

Use the cross-reference (<xref>) element to link to a different location within the current topic, or a different topic within the same help system, or to external sources, such as Web pages, or to a location in another topic. The *href* attribute on the <xref> element provides the location of the target.

Typically it is best to restrict yourself to linking to reference topics where the content of the target is clear from the <xref>'s text, for example API names and their descriptions. With other information types, it may be less clear to the user whether they should follow the link, and often they will, thereby missing important information in following paragraphs. Therefore it is a good idea to use links at the end of the topic, in the <related-links> element, wherever possible, rather than linking from within body content using <xref>. Links at the end of a topic can also be managed from outside the topic, using DITA maps: this allows topics to be quickly integrated into new contexts without breaking links.

Examples

Here's an example of a cross-reference to another topic; that topic's title will be used as the link text.

```
<p>Background information about DITA is provided in the topic titled
<xref href="whatsdita.dita#tmmdita"></xref>.</p>
```

Here's an example of a cross-reference to another topic; the supplied text will be used as the link text

```
<p><xref href="whatsdita.dita#tmmdita">Background information about DITA</xref> is provided
free of charge.</p>
```

If you are linking to anything within a topic, you should use the following format in the href attribute:

`filename.xml#topicid/elementid`

If you are linking within the same file, you can leave off the "filename.xml" part. So, for a section with the ID "mysection", you should use:

`#topicid/mysection`

For a list item within that section, assuming the item has an ID of "mylist", use

`#topicid/mylist`

Regardless of how deeply the target element is nested, the only important pieces are the ID of the containing topic, and the ID of the target element. IDs of topics in DITA must be unique within a file, but IDs of other elements only need to be unique within the topic. You need to be sure that the topic ID is part of your reference.

If your URL has an ampersand in it, you need to code that using a symbol. For example; for this URL:

`http://www.ibm.com/docview.wss?rs=757&context=SSVNX5`

You need to enter the & in the Href attribute as follows:

```
<xref href="http://www.ibm.com/docview.wss?rs=757&amp;context=SSVNX5">
Part number SSVNX5</xref>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or desc) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or desc) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, organizationname
map	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote, area
topic	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote, area
task	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote, area

Doctype	Parents
concept	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote, area
reference	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote, area
glossary	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote, area

Inheritance:

- topic/xref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file, or to a specific element inside a DITA topic. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA content is targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicID"`
	`  href="#topicID/elemID`
	`Target in a different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicID"`
	`  href="fname.dita#topicID/elemID"`
	
	Elements inside a topic need to have their location scoped by the containing topic's ID. Only the id of the target element and the topic that contains it matter: id's on any other containing elements (for example an id on the \<body\> element) are not part of the link syntax.
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

ol

An ordered list (<ol>) is a list of items sorted by sequence or order of importance.

Example

```
Here are the colors of the rainbow in order of appearance from top to bottom:
<ol>
<li>Red</li>
<li>Orange</li>
<li>Yellow</li>
<li>Green</li>
<li>Blue</li>
<li>Indigo</li>
<li>Violet</li>
</ol>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(li) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/ol

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

ul

In an unordered list (<ul>), the order of the list items is not significant. List items are typically styled on output with a "bullet" character, depending on nesting level.

Example

```
<ul>
 <li>This is an item in an unordered list.</li>
 <li>To separate it from other items in the list, the
 formatter puts a bullet beside it.</li>
 <li>The following paragraph, contained in the list item
 element, is part of the list item which contains it.
 <p>This is the contained paragraph.</p></li>
 <li>This is the last list item in our unordered list.</li>
</ul>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(li) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd

Doctype	Parents
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/ul

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

li

A list (<li>) item is a single item in an ordered <ol> or unordered <ul> list. When a DITA topic is formatted for output, numbers and alpha characters are usually output with list items in ordered lists, while bullets and dashes are usually output with list items in unordered lists.

Example

```
<ul>
<li>This is an item in an unordered list.</li>
</ul>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or itemgroup or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or itemgroup or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	ul, ol

Inheritance:

- topic/li

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

sl

The simple list (<sl>) element contains a simple list of items of short, phrase-like content, such as in documenting the materials in a kit or package.

On output, the list should have no bullets, on the assumption that each item is short enough to fit on one line, and needs no additional differentiation from its neighbors.

Example

In a reference topic discussing related modules, the following sample markup could be used:

```
<section><title>Messages</title>
 <p>Messages from the ags_open module are identical with messages from:</p>
 <sl>
  <sli>ags_read</sli>
  <sli>ags_write</sli>
  <sli>ags_close</sli>
 </sl>
</section>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(sli) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/sl

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

sli

A simple list item (<sli>) is a single item in a simple list <sl>. Simple list items have phrase or text content, adequate for describing package contents, for example. When a DITA topic is formatted for output, the items of a simple list are placed each on its own line, with no other prefix such as a number (as in an ordered list) or bullet (as in an unordered list).

Example

See "sl" on page 84.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	sl

Inheritance:

- topic/sli

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dl

A definition list (<dl>) is a list of terms and corresponding definitions. The term (<dt>) is usually flush left. The description or definition (<dd>) is usually either indented and on the next line, or on the same line to the right of the term.

You can also provide an optional heading for the terms and definitions, using the <dlhead> element, which contains header elements for those columns. The default formatting for the <dlhead> looks like a table with a heading row.

Examples

Simple:

```
<dl>
<dlentry>
<dt>Bytes returned</dt>
<dd>The number of bytes of data returned.</dd>
</dlentry>
<dlentry>
<dt>Bytes available</dt>
<dd>The number of bytes of data available to be returned.</dd>
</dlentry>
<dlentry><dt>Handle</dt>
<dd>The returned handle value</dd>
</dlentry>
</dl>
```

With heading:

```
<dl>
 <dlhead>
  <dthd>Image File View Selection</dthd>
  <ddhd>Resulting Information</ddhd>
 </dlhead>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>File Type</dt>
  <dd>Image's file extension</dd>
 </dlentry>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>Image Class</dt>
  <dd>Image is raster, vector, metafile or 3D</dd>
 </dlentry>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>Number of pages</dt>
  <dd>Number of pages in the image</dd>
 </dlentry>
 <dlentry>
  <dt>Fonts</dt>
  <dd>Names of the fonts contained within a vector image</dd>
 </dlentry>
</dl>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((dlhead) *(optional)* then (dlentry) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/dl

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dlhead

The <dlhead> element contains optional headings for the term and description columns in a definition list. The definition list heading contains a heading <dthd> for the column of terms and an optional heading <ddhd>for the column of descriptions.

Example

See "dl" on page 87.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((dthd) *(optional)* then (ddhd) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dl

Inheritance:

- topic/dlhead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dthd

The definition term heading (<dthd>) element is contained in a definition list head (<dlhead>) and provides an optional heading for the column of terms in a description list.

Example

See "dl" on page 87.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlhead

Inheritance:

- topic/dthd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

ddhd

The definition descriptions heading (<ddhd>) element contains an optional heading or title for a column of descriptions or definitions in a definition list

Example

See "dl" on page 87.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlhead

Inheritance:

- topic/ddhd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dlentry

In a definition list, each list item is defined by the definition list entry (<dlentry>) element. The definition list entry element includes a term <dt> and one or more definitions or descriptions <dd> of that term.

Example

See "dl" on page 87

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((dt) *(one or more)* then (dd) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dl

Inheritance:

- topic/dlentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dt

The definition term <dt> element contains a term in a definition list entry.

Example

See "dl" on page 87.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlentry

Inheritance:

- topic/dt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dd

The definition description (<dd>) element contains the description of a term in a definition list entry.

Example

See "dl" on page 87

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or itemgroup or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or itemgroup or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	dlentry

Inheritance:

- topic/dd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

fig

The figure (<fig>) element is a display context (sometimes called an "exhibit") with an optional title for a wide variety of content. Most commonly, the figure element contains an image element (a graphic or artwork), but it can contain several kinds of text objects as well. A title is placed inside the figure element to provide a caption to describe the content.

Example

```
<fig expanse="column"><title>The Handshake</title>
<image href="handshake.jpg" alt="The Handshake"/>
</fig>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	((title) *(optional)* then (desc) *(optional)* then (figgroup or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or image or object or simpletable or xref or fn or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)
map, bookmap	((title) *(optional)* then (desc) *(optional)* then (figgroup or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or image or object or simpletable or xref or fn or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, glossdef, pd
topic	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, pd
task	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, pd
reference	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, pd
map, bookmap	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/fig

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

figgroup

The <figgroup> element is used only for specialization at this time. Figure groups can be used to contain multiple cross-references, footnotes or keywords, but not multipart images. Multipart images in DITA should be represented by a suitable media type displayed by the <object> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditable, topic, task, reference, concept	((title) *(optional)* then (figgroup or xref or fn or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle) *(any number)*)
map, bookmap	((title) *(optional)* then (figgroup or xref or fn or ph or keyword) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditable, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	fig, figgroup

Inheritance:

- topic/figgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

desc

The <desc> element contains the description of the current element. A description should provide more information than the title. This is its behavior in fig/table/linklist, for example. In xref/link, it provides a description of the target; processors that support it may choose to display this as hover help. In object, it contains alternate content for use when in contexts that cannot display the object.

Example

```
<fig><title>The Handshake</title>
<desc>This image shows two hands clasped in a formal,
business-like handshake.</desc>
<image href="handshake.jpg">
 <alt>The handshake</alt>
</image>
</fig>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	fig, object, xref, table, link, linklist
map, bookmap	fig, object, xref, table

Inheritance:

- topic/desc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

image

Include artwork or images in a DITA topic by using the <image> element. The <image> element has optional attributes that indicate whether the placement of the included graphic or artwork should be inline (like a button or icon) or on a separate line for a larger image. There are also optional attributes that indicate the size to which the included graphic or artwork should be scaled. An href attribute is required on the image element, as this attribute creates a pointer to the image, and allows the output formatting processor to bring the image into the text flow. To make the intent of the image more accessible for users using screen readers or text-only readers, always include a description of the image's content in the alt element.

Example

```
<image href="bike.gif" placement="break"><alt>Two-wheeled bicycle</alt></image>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(alt) *(optional)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, organizationname
map	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, pt, pd, imagemap
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, uicontrol, pt, pd, imagemap
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, pt, pd, imagemap
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, uicontrol, pt, pd, imagemap
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, pt, pd, imagemap
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, xref, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, pt, pd, imagemap

Inheritance:

- topic/image

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	The relative path or URL to the image. The href attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: `href="../images/construction.gif"`	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
longdescref	A reference to a textual description of the graphic or object. This attribute supports creating accessible content. It uses standard href syntax. This may be a reference to another DITA topic, or to a non-DITA description. For examples of how this attribute is used in output, see this this topic on long descriptions.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
height	Indicates the vertical dimension for the resulting image display. If necessary, the image is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm". If a height value is specified and no width value is specified, the width will be scaled by the same factor as the height. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
width	Indicates the horizontal dimension for the resulting image display. If necessary, the image is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm". If a width value is specified and no height value is specified, the height will be scaled by the same factor as the width. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Controls the horizontal alignment of an image when placement is specified as "break." Allowable values (processor-validated) are: left, right, center, and current.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scale	Specifies a percentage by which to scale the image in the absence of any specified image height or width; a value of 100 implies that the image should be presented at its intrinsic size. If a value has been specified for this image's height or width attribute (or both), the scale attribute is ignored.	NMTOKEN whose value space is an unsigned integer	#IMPLIED	No
placement	Indicates whether an image should be displayed inline or separated from the surrounding text. The processing default is inline. Allowable values are: inline or break. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	(inline | break | -dita-use-conref-target)	inline	No
alt *(deprecated)*	Alternative text that describes the image to provide accessibility to page readers, or provides a text description when an image cannot be displayed by the user's software. The alt attribute is deprecated; use the alt element instead.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

alt

The alt element provides alternate text for an image. It is equivalent to the alt attribute on the image element; the attribute is deprecated, so the alt element should be used instead. As an element, alt provides direct text entry within an XML editor and is more easily accessed than an attribute for translation.

Example

The markup for alt text within an image looks like this:

```
<image href="tip-ing.jpg">
  <alt>Here's a Tip!</alt>
</image>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	image

Inheritance:

- topic/alt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

object

DITA's <object> element corresponds to the HTML <object> element.

The <object> element allows authors to include animated images, applets, plug-ins, ActiveX controls, video clips, and other multimedia objects in a topic for rendering after transformation to HTML.

To support Flash animations and movies, the value swflash.cab is checked in the codebase attribute. That enables the OBJECT tag in the HTML to display Flash objects in Intenet Explorer. The enable these to display in browsers such as NetScape and FireFox, an EMBED tag is also added to the HTML. Note that while the Embed tag is required to display these objects, the Embed tag is not in the XHTML 1.0 Transitional tag set.

Example

Output processors may need to modify data to enable compatible function across various browsers, so these examples are only representative:

```
<p>Cutting the keys from the system unit:</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
 codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
 data="cutkey370.swf"
```

```
 type="application/x-shockwave-flash"
 height="280"
 width="370"
 id="cutkey370">
 <desc>A description of the task</desc>
 <param name="movie" value="cutkey370.swf"/>
 <param name="quality" value="high"/>
 <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
</object>

<p>What's EIM?</p>
<object classid="clsid:D27CDB6E-AE6D-11cf-96B8-444553540000"
 codebase="http://download.macromedia.com/pub/shockwave/cabs/
flash/swflash.cab#version=6,0,0,0"
 data="eim.swf"
 height="400"
 width="500"
 id="eim">
 <desc>Some great, glorious info</desc>
 <param name="movie" value="eim.swf"/>
 <param name="quality" value="high"/>
 <param name="bgcolor" value="#FFFFFF"/>
 <param name="pluginspace"
 value="http://www.macromedia.com/go/getflashplayer"/>
</object>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((desc) *(optional)* then (param) *(any number)* then (foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, glossdef, pd
topic	data, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, pd
task	data, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	data, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, pd
reference	data, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, pd
map, bookmap	data, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/object

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
declare	When this attribute is set to declare, the current object definition is a declaration only. The object must be instantiated by a later nested object definition referring to this declaration.	declare	#IMPLIED	No
classid	Contains a URL that specifies the location of an object's implementation. It can be used together with the data attribute which is specified relative to the value of the codebase attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
codebase	Specifies the base path (a URL) used for resolving the URL values given for classid, data, and archive attributes. If codebase is not set, the default is the base URL of the current document.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
data	Contains a reference to the location of an object's data. If this attribute is a URL, it is specified relative to the value of the codebase attribute. If this attribute is set, the type attribute should also be set.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Indicates the content type for the data specified by the data attribute. This attribute should be set when the data attribute is set to avoid loading unsupported content types. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (No default type)	No
codetype	Indicates the content type for the data specified by the classid attribute. This attribute should be set when the classid attribute is set to avoid loading unsupported content types. If this attribute value is not set, the default is the value of the type attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
archive	Specifies a space-separated list of URLs indicating resources needed by the object. These resources may include those URLs specified by the classid and data attributes. Preloading these resources usually results in faster loadtimes for objects. The URLs in the list should be relative to the URL specified in the codebase attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
standby	Contains a message to be displayed while an object is loading.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
height	Indicates the vertical dimension for the resulting object display. If necessary, the object is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: ″5″, ″5in″, and ″10.5cm″. If a height value is specified and no width value is specified, the width will be scaled by the same factor as the height. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
width	Indicates the horizontal dimension for the resulting object display. If necessary, the object is scaled to the specified size. The value of this attribute is a real number optionally following by a unit of measure from the set of pc, pt, px, in, cm, mm, em (picas, points, pixels, inches, centimeters, millimeters, and ems respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: ″5″, ″5in″, and ″10.5cm″. If a width value is specified and no height value is specified, the height will be scaled by the same factor as the width. If both a height value and width value are specified, some implementations may not be able to scale the two directions by a different factor and may therefore ignore one of the two values.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
usemap	Indicates that a client-side image map is to be used. An image map specifies active geometric regions of an included object and assigns a link to each region. When a link is selected, a document may be retrieved or a program may run on the server.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tabindex	Position the object in tabbing order.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
longdescref	A reference to a textual description of the graphic or object. This attribute supports creating accessible content. It uses standard href syntax. This may be a reference to another DITA topic, or to a non-DITA description. For examples of how this attribute is used in output, see this this topic on long descriptions.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

param

The parameter (<param>) element specifies a set of values that may be required by an <object> at runtime. Any number of <param> elements may appear in the content of an object in any order, but must be placed at the start of the content of the enclosing object. This element is comparable to the XHMTL <param> element.

Example

See "object" on page 102.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	object

Inheritance:

- topic/param

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	The name of the parameter.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
valuetype	Specifies the type of the value attribute. Allowed values are: **data** A value of data means that the value will be evaluated and passed to the object's implementation as a string. **ref** A value of ref indicates that the value of valuetype is a URL that designates a resource where run-time values are stored. This allows support tools to identify URLs that are given as parameters. **object** A value of object indicates that the value of valuetype is an identifier that refers to an object declaration in the document. The identifier must be the value of the ID attribute set for the declared object element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	This attribute specifies the content type of the resource designated by the value attribute only in the case where *valuetype* is set to "ref". This attribute specifies for the user agent the type of values that will be found at the URI designated by value. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (No default type)	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

pre

The preformatted element (<pre>) preserves line breaks and spaces entered manually by the author in the content of the element, and also presents the content in a monospaced type font (depending on your output formatting processor). Do not use <pre> when a more semantically specific element is appropriate, such as <codeblock>.

Example

```
<pre>
MEMO: programming team fun day
Remember to bring a kite, softball glove, or other favorite
outdoor accessory to tomorrow's fun day outing at Zilker Park.
Volunteers needed for the dunking booth.
</pre>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/pre

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

lines

The <lines> element may be used to represent dialogs, lists, text fragments, and so forth. The <lines> element is similar to <pre> in that hard line breaks are preserved, but the font style is not set to monospace, and extra spaces inside the lines are not preserved.

Example

```
On a trip to the beach, don't forget:
<lines>
suntan lotion
sunglasses
a beach towel
</lines>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd

Doctype	Parents
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/lines

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

cite

The <cite> element is used when you need a bibliographic citation that refers to a book or article. It specifically identifies the title of the resource.

Example

```
<p>The online article <cite>Specialization in the Darwin Information Typing
Architecture</cite> provides a detailed explanation of how to define new
topic types.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, organizationname

Doctype	Parents
map	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote
topic	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote
task	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote
concept	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote
reference	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote
glossary	desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, synnote

Inheritance:

- topic/cite

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

lq

The long quote (<lq>) element indicates content quoted from another source. Use the quote element <q> for short, inline quotations, and long quote <lq> for quotations that are too long for inline use, following normal guidelines for quoting other sources. You can store a URL to the source of the quotation in the *href* attribute; the href value may point to a DITA topic.

Example

```
<p>This is the first line of the address that
Abraham Lincoln delivered on November 19, 1863 for the dedication
of the cemetery at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.</p>
<lq>Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new
nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men
are created equal.</lq>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
map, bookmap	desc, p, note, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry

Inheritance:

- topic/lq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A hyperlink representing a bibliographic citation to resources that can be accessed by browsers (meaning a URL). The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

type	Indicates the location of the source of the quote. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are:
	
	external
	    the href is to a Web site
	
	internal
	    the href is to a DITA topic
	
	bibliographic
	    the href is to a specialized bibliographic topic. There is not currently a standard bibliographic topic type at OASIS.
	
	-dita-use-conref-target
	    See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.
		(external | internal | bibliographic | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

reftitle	The title of the document or topic being quoted.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

q

A quotation element (<q>) indicates content quoted from another source. This element is used for short quotes which are displayed inline. Use the long quote element (<lq>) for quotations that should be set off from the surrounding text.

Example

```
George said, <q>Disengage the power supply before servicing the unit.</q>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, organizationname
map	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry
ditabase	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

- topic/q

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 8. Table elements

DITA topics support two types of tables. One is the most common table format used in industry, the <CALS table> (or more recently known also as the Oasis Table Exchange Model). The CALS table supports the spanning of multiple rows or columns for special layout or organizational needs, and provides a wide variety of controls over the display properties of the data and even the table structure itself.

The other table structure in DITA is called <simpletable>. As the name implies, it is structurally less sophisticated than the CALS table, and can be used as a very simple, regular table for which close control of formatting is not as important. However, the main advantage of simpletable is for describing lists of data with regular headings, such as telephone directory listings, display adapter configuration data, or API properties.

table

The <table> element organizes arbitrarily complex relationships of tabular information. This standard table markup allows column or row spanning and table captions or descriptions. An optional title allowed inside the table element provides a caption to describe the table.

See simpletable for a simplified table model that can be specialized to represent more regular relationships of data.

The DITA table is based on the OASIS Exchange Table Model, augmented with DITA attributes which enable it for specialization, conref, and other DITA processing. In addition, the table includes a desc element, which enables table description that is parallel with figure description.

In DITA tables, in place of the expanse attribute used by other DITA elements, the pgwide attribute is used in order to conform with the OASIS Exchange Table Model. This attribute has a similar semantic (1=page width; 0=resize to galley or column).

Note: The scale attribute represents a stylistic markup property that is maintained for now in tables for legacy purposes. External stylesheets should enable less dependency on this attribute. You should use the scale attribute judiciously in your topics.

Example

Source:

```
<table>
<tgroup cols="2">
<colspec colname="COLSPEC0" colwidth="121*"/>
<colspec colname="COLSPEC1" colwidth="76*"/>
<thead>
<row>
<entry colname="COLSPEC0" valign="top">Animal</entry>
<entry colname="COLSPEC1" valign="top">Gestation</entry>
</row>
</thead>
<tbody>
<row>
<entry>Elephant (African and Asian)</entry>
<entry>19-22 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Giraffe</entry>
<entry>15 months</entry>
</row>
```

```
<row>
<entry>Rhinoceros</entry>
<entry>14-16 months</entry>
</row>
<row>
<entry>Hippopotamus</entry>
<entry>7 1/2 months</entry>
</row>
</tbody>
</tgroup>
</table>
```

Formatted output:

Animal	Gestation
Elephant (African and Asian)	19-22 months
Giraffe	15 months
Rhinoceros	14-16 months
Hippopotamus	7 1/2 months

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(((title) *(optional)* then (desc) *(optional)*) *(optional)* then (tgroup) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, stepresult, result, postreq, refbody, refsyn, glossdef, pd
topic	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, pd
task	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, pd
reference	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, refbody, refsyn, pd
map, bookmap	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, draft-comment

Inheritance:

- topic/table

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
frame	Specifies which portion of a border should surround the element. Allowable values are: **top** Draw a line before the element **bottom** Draw a line after the element **topbot** Draw a line both before and after the element **all** Draw a box around the element **sides** Draw a line at each side of the element **none** Don't draw any lines around this element **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information. Some DITA processors or output formats may not be able to support all values.	(top | bottom | topbot | all | sides | none | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
pgwide	Determines the horizontal placement of the element. Supported values are 1 and 0, although these are not mandated by the DTD. For PDF, the value "1" places the element on the left page margin; "0" aligns the element with the left margin of the current text line and takes indention into account. For XHTML, the table surrounds the table data. Either value sets the table width to 100%.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
rowheader	This attribute specifies whether the content of the first column in a table contains row headings. In the same way that a column header introduces a table column, the row header introduces the table row. This attribute makes tables whose first column contains row headings more readable on output. Allowable values are: **firstcol** The first column contains the row headings. **norowheader** Indicates that no column contains row headings. This is the processing default. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(firstCol | norowheader| -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
scale	Specifies a percentage, selected from an enumerated list, that is used to resize fonts in relation to the normal text size. This attribute is primarily useful for print-oriented display. The scale attribute provides an acknowledged style-based property directly on DITA elements. For the table and fig elements, the intent of the property is to allow authors to adjust font sizes on the content of the containing element, primarily for print accomodation. An image in these contexts is to be scaled only by its own direct scale property. If not specifically scaled, such an image is unchanged by the scale property of its parent table or fig.	(50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tgroup

The <tgroup> element in a table contains column, row, spanning, header and footer specifications, and the body (<tbody>) of the table.

31 May 2007

Example

See "table" on page 115.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((colspec) *(any number)* then (thead) *(optional)* then tbody)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	table

Inheritance:

- topic/tgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
cols	Indicates the number of columns in a <tgroup> in a table.	NMTOKEN	#REQUIRED	Yes
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are: **left** Indicates left alignment of the text. **right** Indicates right alignment of the text. **center** Indicates center alignment of the text. **justify** Justifies the contents to both the left and the right. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(left | right | center | justify | char | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

colspec

The <colspec> element contains a column specification for a table, including assigning a column name and number, cell content alignment, and column width.

Example

See "table" on page 115.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	tgroup

Inheritance:

- topic/colspec

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
colnum	Indicates the number of a column in the table, counting from the first logical column to the last column.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colname	Specifies the table column name in which an entry is found.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colwidth	Describes the column width.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are: **left** Indicates left alignment of the text. **right** Indicates right alignment of the text. **center** Indicates center alignment of the text. **justify** Justifies the contents to both the left and the right. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(left | right | center | justify | char | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
char	alignment character Default source for entry elements starting in this column. If character alignment is specified, the value is the single alignment character source for any implied char values for entry immediately in this column. A value of "" (the null string) means there is no aligning character.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
charoff	horizontal offset of alignment character when align=char Default source for entry elements starting in this column. For character alignment on an entry in the column, horizontal character offset is the percent of the current column width to the left of the (left edge of the) alignment character. This value should be number, greater than 0 and less than or equal to 100.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

thead

The table header (<thead>) element precedes the table body (<tbody>) element in a complex table.

Example

See "table" on page 115.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((row) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	tgroup

Inheritance:

- topic/thead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tbody

The <tbody> element contains the rows in a table.

Example

See "table" on page 115.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(row) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	tgroup

Inheritance:

- topic/tbody

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

row

The <row> element contains a single row in a table <tgroup>.

Example

See "table" on page 115.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((entry) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	thead, tbody

Inheritance:

- topic/row

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

entry

The <entry> element defines a single cell in a table.

Example

See "table" on page 115.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	row

Inheritance:

- topic/entry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
colname	Specifies the table column name in which an entry is found.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
namest	Specifies the first logical column that is included in a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
nameend	Specifies the last logical column that is included in a horizontal span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
morerows	Specifies the number of additional rows to add in a vertical span.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
colsep	Column separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
rowsep	Row separator. A value of 0 indicates no separators; 1 indicates separators.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
align	Describes the alignment of text in a table column. Allowable values are: **left** Indicates left alignment of the text. **right** Indicates right alignment of the text. **center** Indicates center alignment of the text. **justify** Justifies the contents to both the left and the right. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(left | right | center | justify | char | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
char	alignment character Default source for entry elements starting in this column. If character alignment is specified, the value is the single alignment character source for any implied char values for entry immediately in this column. A value of "" (the null string) means there is no aligning character.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
charoff	horizontal offset of alignment character when align=char Default source for entry elements starting in this column. For character alignment on an entry in the column, horizontal character offset is the percent of the current column width to the left of the (left edge of the) alignment character. This value should be number, greater than 0 and less than or equal to 100.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
valign	Indicates the vertical alignment of text in a table entry (cell). Allowable values are: **top** Align the text to the top of the table entry (cell). **bottom** Align the text to the bottom of the table entry (cell). **middle** Align the text to the middle of the table entry (cell). **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(top | bottom | middle | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

simpletable

The <simpletable> element is used for tables that are regular in structure and do not need a caption. Choose the simple table element when you want to show information in regular rows and columns. For example, multi-column tabular data such as phone directory listings or parts lists are good candidates for simpletable. Another good use of simpletable is for information that seems to beg for a "three-part definition list"—just use the keycol attribute to indicate which column represents the "key" or term-like column of your structure.

This close match of simpletable to tabular, regular data makes simpletable suitable as the basis for specialized structures such as properties (for programming information) and choice tables (for tasks).

Example

Source:

```
<simpletable>
 <sthead>
  <stentry>Type style</stentry>
  <stentry>Elements used</stentry>
 </sthead>
 <strow>
  <stentry>Bold</stentry>
  <stentry>b</stentry>
 </strow>
 <strow>
  <stentry>Italic</stentry>
  <stentry>i</stentry>
 </strow>
 <strow>
  <stentry>Underlined</stentry>
  <stentry>u</stentry>
 </strow>
</simpletable>
```

Formatted output:

Type style	Elements used
Bold	b
Italic	i
Underlined	u

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((sthead) *(optional)* then (strow) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, stepresult, result, postreq, refbody, refsyn, glossdef, pd
topic	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, pd
task	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, pd
reference	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, draft-comment, abstract, body, section, example, refbody, refsyn, pd
map, bookmap	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, draft-comment

Inheritance:

- topic/simpletable

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

relcolwidth	A relative value to specify the width of a column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The values are totaled and made a percent. For example:
	
	`relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"`
	
	causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%.
	
	`relcolwidth="90* 150*"`
	
	causes width of 37.5% and 62.5%.
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
keycol	Defines the column that will be used for row headings. No value indicates no key column. When present, the numerical value causes the specified column to be highlighted as a vertical header.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
refcols	Designates columns that contain references, and are candidates for automated linking. Columns are identified by a space-delimited list of numbers (for example: 1 3).	NMTOKENS	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

sthead

The simpletable header (<sthead>) element contains the table's header row. The header row is optional in a simple table.

Example

See "simpletable" on page 129.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(stentry) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	simpletable

Inheritance:

- topic/sthead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

strow

The <simpletable> row (<strow>) element specifies a row in a simple table.

Example

See "simpletable" on page 129.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(stentry) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	simpletable

Inheritance:

- topic/strow

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

stentry

The simpletable entry (<stentry>) element represents a single table cell, like <entry> in <table>. You can place any number of stentry cells in either an <sthead> element (for headings) or <strow> element (for rows of data).

Example

See "simpletable" on page 129.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	sthead, strow

Inheritance:

- topic/stentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
specentry	The specialized entry attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default header title for a specialized stentry element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 9. Prolog elements

The prolog elements represent the metadata associated with a document. Most of the metadata in a topic prolog can also be authored in a DITA map, in the map's <topicmeta> element.

The primary types of information that you can store in the prolog include:

- author
- copyright information
- critical tracking dates
- permissions for use/management of the content
- Key words and index terms related to the topic
- extensive metadata about the content of the document
- a resourceid that allows a topic to be associated with external resources such as linking to programming components as contextual help

prolog

The <prolog> element contains information about the topic as an whole (for example, author information or subject category) that is either entered by the author or machine-maintained. Much of the metadata inside the <prolog> will not be displayed with the topic on output, but may be used by processes that generate search indexes or customize navigation.

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <audience type="user" job="using" experiencelevel="novice"/>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((author) *(any number)* then (source) *(optional)* then (publisher) *(optional)* then (copyright) *(any number)* then (critdates) *(optional)* then (permissions) *(optional)* then (metadata) *(any number)* then (resourceid) *(any number)* then (data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	topic, concept, task, reference
topic	topic
task	topic, task
concept	topic, concept
reference	topic, reference
glossary	topic, concept

Inheritance:

- topic/prolog

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

audience

The <audience> metadata element indicates, through the value of its type attribute, the intended audience for a topic. Since a topic can have multiple audiences, you can include multiple audience elements. For each audience you specify, you can identify the high-level task (*job*) they are trying to accomplish and the level of experience (*experiencelevel*) expected. The audience element may be used to provide a more detailed definition of values used throughout the map or topic on the audience attribute.

Example

For a command reference topic for experienced programmers, the following might be an appropriate indication of that audience:

```
<audience type="programmer" job="programming" experiencelevel="expert"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/audience

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

type	Indicates the kind of person for whom the content of the topic is intended. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are:
	
	user A user of the product
	
	purchaser
	    A product purchaser
	
	administrator
	    A product administrator
	
	programmer
	    A programmer
	
	executive
	    An executive
	
	services
	    Someone who provides services related to the product
	
	other Use the value specified by the othertype attribute
	
	-dita-use-conref-target
	    See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.
		(user | purchaser | administrator | programmer | executive | services | other | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

othertype	Indicates an alternate audience type, when the type is not available in the type attribute value list. This value is used as the user-provided audience when the type attribute value is set to "other."	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
job	Indicates the high-level task the audience for the topic is trying to accomplish. Different audiences may read the same topic in terms of different high-level tasks; for example, an administrator may read the topic while administering, while a programmer may read the same topic while customizing. Allowable values are: installing, customizing, administering, programming, using, maintaining, troubleshooting, evaluating, planning, migrating, other, -dita-use-conref-target.	installing | customizing | administering | programming | using | maintaining | troubleshooting | evaluating | planning | migrating | other | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
otherjob	If the job attribute value is "other" the value of this attribute is used to identify a kind of job other than the default ones provided by the job attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
experiencelevel	Indicates the level of experience the audience is assumed to possess. Different audiences may have different experience levels with respect to the same topic; for example, a topic may require general knowledge from a programmer, but expert knowledge from a user. Allowable values are: **novice** A first time user. **general** The most common user. **expert** An experienced user. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(novice | general | expert | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
name	Used to associate the audience element with values used in the audience attribute	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

author

The <author> metadata element contains the name of the topic's author.

Example

```
<prolog>
<author type="creator">Jane Roe</author>
<author type="contributor">John Doe</author>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/author

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

type	Indicates the primary author of the content. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are: **creator** The primary or original author of the content. **contributor** An additional author who is not primary. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(creator | contributor | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

brand

The <brand> element indicates the manufacturer or brand associated with the product described by the parent <prodinfo> element.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
<prodname>...</prodname>
<vrmlist>
<brand>eServer</brand>
<series>iSeries</series>
<opsys>Linux</opsys>
</vrmlist>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/brand

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

category

The <category> element can represent any category by which a topic might be classified for retrieval or navigation; for example, the categories could be used to group topics in a generated navigation bar. Topics can belong to multiple categories.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <metadata>
  <category>Things that are blue</category>
 </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/category

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

component

The <component> element describes the component of the product that this topic is concerned with. For example, a product might be made up of many components, each of which is installable separately. Components might also be shared by several products so that the same component is available for installation with many products. An implementation may (but need not) use this identification to check cross-component dependencies when some components are installed, but not others. An implementation may also (but need not) use the identification make sure that topics are hidden, removed, or flagged in some way when the component they describe isn't installed.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
 <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
 <vrmlist>
  <vrm version="v5r2"/>
 </vrmlist>
 <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/component

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

copyright

The <copyright> element is used for a single copyright entry. It includes the copyright years and the copyright holder. Multiple <copyright> statements are allowed.

Example

```
<prolog>
<copyright>
<copyryear year="2001-04-12"></copyryear>
<copyrholder>IBM</copyrholder>
</copyright>
<copyright type=secondary>
<copyryear year="2002-03-03"></copyryear>
<copyrholder>Schweetones Publishing, Inc.</copyrholder>
</copyright>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((copyryear) *(one or more)* then copyrholder)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
map, bookmap	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/copyright

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Indicates the legal status of the copyright holder. Note that this differs from the type attribute on many other DITA elements. Allowable values are: **primary** 　　The copyright holder with first claim on the copyright **secondary** 　　An additional copyright holder who is not primary **-dita-use-conref-target** 　　See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(primary | secondary | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

copyrholder

The copyright holder (<copyrholder>) element names the entity that holds legal rights to the material contained in the topic.

Example

```
<copyright>
<copyryear year=2001></copyryear>
<copyrholder>IBM</copyrholder>
</copyright>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	copyright

Inheritance:

- topic/copyrholder

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

copyryear

The <copyryear> element contains the copyright year as specified by the *year* attribute.

Example

```
<copyright>
<copyryear year="2001"></copyryear>
<copyrholder>IBM</copyrholder>
</copyright>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	copyright

Inheritance:

- topic/copyryear

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
year	The year in YYYY format.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

created

The <created> element specifies the document creation date using the *date* attribute.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <critdates>
  <created date="2001-06-12"></created>
  <revised golive="2001-08-20"></revised>
 </critdates>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	critdates

Inheritance:

- topic/created

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
date	The document creation date. Enter the date as YYYY-MM-DD where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31. See A Summary of the International Standard Date and Time Notation for background.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
golive	The publication or general availability (GA) date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
expiry	The date when the information should be retired or refreshed, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

critdates

The <critdates> element contains the critical dates in a document life cycle, such as the creation date and multiple revision dates.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <critdates>
  <created date="2001-06-12"></created>
  <revised golive="2001-08-20"></revised>
 </critdates>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(created then (revised) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/critdates

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

featnum

The <featnum> element contains the feature number of a product in the metadata.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
 <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
 <vrmlist>
  <vrm version="v5r2"/>
 </vrmlist>
 <featnum>135</featnum>
 <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/featnum

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

keywords

The <keywords> element contains a list of key words (using <indexterm> or <keyword> markup) that can be used by a search engine.

When DITA topics are output to XHTML, any <keyword> or <indexterm> elements in the <keywords> element are placed in the Web page metadata. The index terms in this context are also included in any generated index.

Example

The following example is metadata from an installation task:

```
<prolog>
 <keywords>
  <keyword>installing</keyword>
  <keyword>uninstalling</keyword>
  <keyword>prerequisites</keyword>
  <keyword>helps</keyword>
  <keyword>wizards</keyword>
 </keywords>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(indexterm or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(indexterm or keyword) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/keywords

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

metadata

The <metadata> section of the prolog contains information about a topic such as audience and product information. Metadata can be used by computational processes to select particular topics or to prepare search indexes or to customize navigation. Elements inside of <metadata> provide information about the content and subject of a topic; prolog elements outside of <metadata> provide lifecycle information for the content unit (such as the author or copyright), which are unrelated to the subject.

metadata elements provide keywords/categories/metadata about the content/subject - stuff outside provides lifecycle info for the content unit, regardless of its subject (like who authored, etc.)

Example

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <audience type="user" job="using" experiencelevel="novice"/>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((audience) *(any number)* then (category) *(any number)* then (keywords) *(any number)* then (prodinfo) *(any number)* then (othermeta) *(any number)* then (data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prolog

Inheritance:

- topic/metadata

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the contained links are derived. This value is automatically generated by the same process that creates the links from the map, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> or <linkpool> is manually created by the author, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

othermeta

The <othermeta> element can be used to identify properties not otherwise included in <metadata> and assign name/content values to those properties. The name attribute identifies the property and the content attribute specifies the property's value. The values in this attribute are output as HTML metadata elements, and have no defined meaning for other possible outputs such as PDF.

Example

```
<othermeta name="ThreadWidthSystem" content="metric"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/othermeta

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	The name of the metadata property.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
content	The value for the property named in the name attribute.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
translate-content	Indicates whether the content attribute of the defined metadata property should be translated or not.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

permissions

The <permissions> prolog element can indicate any preferred controls for access to a topic. Topics can be filtered based on the permissions element. This capability depends on your output formatting process.

Example

```
<prolog>
<permissions view="entitled"/>
...
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/permissions

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

view	Defines the classifications of viewers allowed to view the document. Allowable values are:
	
	internal
	    For internal use only.
	
	classified
	    For a certain group, only.
	
	all The world.
	
	entitled
	    Special folks, only.
	
	-dita-use-conref-target
	    See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.
		(internal | classified | all | entitled | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	Yes

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

platform

The <platform> metadata element contains a description of the operating system and/or hardware related to the product being described by the <prodinfo> element. The platform element may be used to provide a more detailed definition of values used throughout the map or topic on the platform attribute.

Example

See "prodinfo" on page 155.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

31 May 2007

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/platform

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

prodinfo

The <prodinfo> metadata element in the prolog contains information about the product or products that are the subject matter of the current topic. The prodinfo element may be used to provide a more detailed definition of values used throughout the map or topic on the product attribute.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <metadata>
  <prodinfo>
   <prodname>Transcription Assistant</prodname>
    <vrmlist><vrm version="1" release="3" modification="1"/></vrmlist>
   <platform>Linux</platform>
  </prodinfo>
 </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((prodname) then (vrmlist) then (brand or series or platform or prognum or featnum or component) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	metadata
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/prodinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

prodname

The <prodname> metadata element contains the name of the product that is supported by the information in this topic.

Example

See "prodinfo" on page 155

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/prodname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

prognum

The <prognum> metadata element identifies the program number of the associated program product. This is typically an order number or a product tracking code that could be replaced by an order number when a product completes development.

Example

See "prodinfo" on page 155.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/prognum

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

publisher

The <publisher> metadata element contains the name of the person, company, or organization responsible for making the content or subject of the topic available.

Example

```
<publisher>AJ Printing Inc.</publisher>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
map, bookmap	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/publisher

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

resourceid

The <resourceid> element provides an identifier for applications that require them in a particular format, when the normal id attribute of the topic can't be used. Each resourceid entry should be unique. It is one of the metadata elements that can be included within the prolog of a topic, along with document tracking and product information, etc. The element has no content, but takes an *id* attribute and an *appname* attribute.

Example

```
<resourceid id="sqlid00375" appname="dbaccess"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/resourceid

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	The value used by a specific application to identify the topic.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
appname	Contains the name of the application that will use the resource id to identify the topic.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

revised

The <revised> element in the prolog is used to maintain tracking dates that are important in a topic development cycle, such as the last modification date, the original availability date, and the expiration date.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <critdates>
  <created date="1/1/1999" golive="2/15/1999" expiry="9/9/9999"/>
  <revised modified="3/3/2003" golive="2/3/2002" expiry="9/9/9999"/>
 </critdates>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	critdates

Inheritance:

- topic/revised

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
modified	The last modification date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
golive	The publication or general availability (GA) date, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
expiry	The date when the information should be retired or refreshed, entered as YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month from 01 to 12, and DD is the day from 01-31.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

series

The <series> metadata element contains information about the product series that the topic supports.

Example

```
<prodinfo>
 <prodname>BatCom</prodname>
 <vrmlist><vrm version="5"/></vrmlist>
 <series>tSeries</series>
 <prognum>5412-SS1</prognum>
 <featnum>135</featnum>
 <component>TCP/IP</component>
</prodinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/series

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

source

The <source> element contains a reference to a resource from which the present topic is derived, either completely or in part. The element can contain a description of the resource; the *href* reference can be a string or a URL that points to it.

Example

```
<prolog>
 <source href="http://www.ibm.com">Somewhere, someplace</source>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	prolog
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/source

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A pointer to the external resource from which the present resource is derived. The href attribute identifies the destination of the resource using conventional URL syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

vrmlist

The <vrmlist> element contains a set of <vrm> elements for logging the version, release, and modification information for multiple products or versions of products to which the topic applies.

Example

The recent versions of a mythical product might be logged thus using the vrmlist markup:

```
<prolog>
 <metadata>
  <prodinfo>
   <prodname>Widge-o-matic</prodname>
   <vrmlist>
     <vrm version="1.0" release="2001-03-30" modification="0"/>
     <vrm version="1.0" modification="1" release="2001-10-03"/>
   </vrmlist>
  </prodinfo>
 </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(vrm) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	prodinfo

Inheritance:

- topic/vrmlist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

vrm

The vrm empty element contains information about a single product's version, modification, and release, to which the current topic applies.

Example

See "vrmlist" on page 164.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	vrmlist

Inheritance:

- topic/vrm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
version	Indicates the released version number of the product(s) that the document describes.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
release	Contains the product release identifier.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
modification	Indicates when the product described in this topic was last modified.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 10. Related links elements

The related-links section of DITA topics is a special structure that supports the navigational rules from a topic to its related neighbor topics.

Links are different from cross-references in that cross-references occur only within the body of a topic and can target any element in this or other topics; links only represent topic-to-topic connections, or connections to non-DITA-topic resources. Links are located after the body of a topic, in the related-links element.

Related links can also be managed indirectly using DITA maps, which provide a more efficient way to manage links as an aspect of the collection of topics rather than as embedded pointers in each topic.

link

The <link> element defines a relationship to another topic. Links represent the types and roles of topics in a web of information, and therefore represent navigational links within that web. Links are typically sorted on output based on their attributes. The optional container elements for link (<linkpool> and <linklist>) allow authors to define groups with common attributes, or to preserve the authored sequence of links on output. Links placed in a <linkpool> may be rearranged for display purposes (combined with other local or map-based links); links in a <linklist> should be displayed in the order they are defined. Refer to those elements for additional explanation.

Example

```
<related-links>
<linkpool type="concept">
<link href="czover.htm#sqljsupp"/>
<link href="czesqlj.htm#sqljemb/>
</linkpool>
<related-links>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((linktext) *(optional)* then (desc) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	related-links, linklist, linkpool

Inheritance:

- topic/link

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See "The role attribute" on page 482 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

linklist

The <linklist> element defines an author-arranged group of links. Within <linklist>, the organization of links on final output is in the same order as originally authored in the DITA topic.

There are two ways to organize related information links: add them all in no particular order, using the <linkpool> or <related-links> elements, and let the output formatting processor sort them; or pre-group them using one or more <linklist> elements. When you pre-group them using <linklist>, then the order of the links as you created them is preserved during the output formatting process.

Attributes set on <linklist> are inherited by its descendants. For example, if you've got a <linklist> that contains all external links, you can set *scope="external"* on that outer<linklist> element and leave it off the contained links.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (desc) *(optional)* then (linklist or link) *(any number)* then (linkinfo) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	related-links, linklist

Inheritance:

- topic/linklist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family collection represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Sequence indicates that the order of the child topics is significant; output processors will typically link between them in order. Unordered indicates that the order is not significant. Choice indicates that one of the children should be selected. If no value is specified, processors should treat the default as "unordered", although no default is specified in the DTD. See this topic for more information on the conref value. Usage of the collection-type attribute on <reltable> and <relcolspec> is currently undefined, and reserved for future use.	(unordered | sequence | choice | family | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
duplicates	Specifies whether or not duplicate links will be filtered out of a linklist. Allowable values are: "yes" (allow duplicate links), or "no" (filter out duplicate links). In general, duplicate links in linklists are preserved.. Note that links are regarded as duplicates only if their content plus all attributes match.	#IMPLIED	The attribute value is currently ignored, but should default to yes for links in linklists and no for all other links.	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the contained links are derived. This value is automatically generated by the same process that creates the links from the map, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> or <linkpool> is manually created by the author, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See "The role attribute" on page 482 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

linkpool

The <linkpool> element defines a group of links that have common characteristics, such as type or audience or source. When links are not in a <linklist> (that is, they are in <related-links> or <linkpool> elements), the organization of links on final output is determined by the output process, not by the order that the links actually occur in the DITA topic.

There are two ways to organize related information links: add them all in no particular order, using the <linkpool> or <related-links> elements, and let the output formatting processor sort them; or pre-group them using one or more <linklist> elements. When you pre-group them using <linklist>, then the order of the links as you created them is preserved during the output formatting process.

Attributes set on <linkpool> are inherited by its descendants. For example, if you've got a <linkpool> that contains all external links, you can set *scope="external"* on that outer<linkpool> element and leave it off the links it contains.

Example

```
<related-links>
<linkpool type="task">
<link href="generalfaq.html#installing" role="parent"/>
<link href="register.html#newuser" role="sibling"/>
</linkpool>
</related-links>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(linkpool or link) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	related-links, linkpool

Inheritance:

- topic/linkpool

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family collection represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Sequence indicates that the order of the child topics is significant; output processors will typically link between them in order. Unordered indicates that the order is not significant. Choice indicates that one of the children should be selected. If no value is specified, processors should treat the default as "unordered", although no default is specified in the DTD. See this topic for more information on the conref value. Usage of the collection-type attribute on <reltable> and <relcolspec> is currently undefined, and reserved for future use.	(unordered | sequence | choice | family | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
duplicates	Specifies whether or not duplicate links will be filtered out of a linklist. Allowable values are: "yes" (allow duplicate links), or "no" (filter out duplicate links). In general, duplicate links in linklists are preserved.. Note that links are regarded as duplicates only if their content plus all attributes match.	#IMPLIED	The attribute value is currently ignored, but should default to yes for links in linklists and no for all other links.	No
mapkeyref	Identifies the map, if any, from which the contained links are derived. This value is automatically generated by the same process that creates the links from the map, as a way to identify which map the links came from. If the <linklist> or <linkpool> is manually created by the author, there is no need to use this attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See "The role attribute" on page 482 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

linktext

The <linktext> element provides the literal label or line of text for a link. In most cases, the text of a link can be resolved during processing by cross reference with the target resource. Use the <linktext> element only when the target cannot be reached, such as when it is a peer or external link, or the target is local but not in DITA format. When used inside a topic, it will be used as the text for the specified link; when used within a map, it will be used as the text for generated links that point to the specified topic.

Example

```
<link href="tzover.htm#accsqlj">
 <linktext>Accessing relational data with SQLJ</linktext>
</link>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference	link
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta
map	topicmeta

Inheritance:

"- topic/linktext " when used in topics, and "- map/linktext " when used in maps.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

linkinfo

The <linkinfo> element allows you to place a descriptive paragraph following a list of links in a <linklist> element.

Example

```
<linklist collection-type="sequence">
  <title>Repairing widgets</title>
  <link href="debug.dita" type="task"></link>
  <link href="repair.dita" type="task"></link>
  <link href="test.dita" type="task"></link>
  <linkinfo>To repair a reciprocating widget,
you must follow the instructions very carefully. Note
the sequence to follow. Do it.</linkinfo>
</linklist>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	linklist

Inheritance:

- topic/linkinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 11. Miscellaneous elements

Most DITA elements represent discourse, or information that is placed exactly as entered. However, there are also types of information that are usually authored in context with a thought or issue, but upon output, the content might be relocated, suppressed, or used only for purposes such as inline annotations for drafts. These elements include footnotes, index entries, draft comments, and special cleanup containers that can hold migrated data that still needs a writer's intervention to get into the right place.

dita

The <dita> element provides a top-level container for multiple topics when you create documents using the ditabase document type. The <dita> element lets you create any sequence of concept, task, and reference topics, and the ditabase document type lets you further nest these topic types inside each other. The <dita> element has no particular output implications; it simply allows you to create multiple topics of different types at the same level in a single document.

Inheritance

Not a specializable DITA element.

Example

```
<dita>
  <concept id="batintro">...</concept>
  <reference id="batparts">...</reference>
  <task id="batfeeding">...</task>
  <task id="battraining">...</task>
  <task id="batcleanup">...</task>
</dita>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase	(topic or concept or task or reference or glossentry) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

draft-comment

The <draft-comment> element allows simple review and discussion of topic contents within the marked-up content. Use the <draft-comment> element to ask a question or make a comment that you would like others to review. To indicate the source of the draft comment or the status of the comment, use the author, time or disposition attributes.

Processing systems should provide a run-time flag or parameter to cause the content of this element to be specially displayed for draft output only. By default, it is stripped out to prevent publishing internal comments by mistake.

Example

```
<draft-comment author="EBP">Where's the usage information for this
section?</draft-comment>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, organizationname
map	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry
ditabase	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd
topic	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd
task	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, codeblock, pd
concept	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd
reference	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, screen, codeblock, pd
glossary	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd

Inheritance:

- topic/draft-comment

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
author	Designates the originator of the draft comment.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
time	Describes when the draft comment was created.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
disposition	Status of the draft comment. Values can be issue, open, accepted, rejected, deferred, duplicate, reopened, unassigned, or completed.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

fn

Use footnote (<fn>) to annotate text with notes that are not appropriate for inclusion in line or to indicate the source for facts or other material used in the text.

Footnote content is always skipped at the place where it was entered, and reproduced elsewhere, according to these rules:
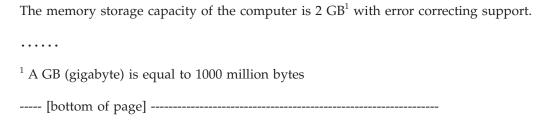
- A footnote with no given *id* attribute is a **single-use** footnote. Upon output, it generates a number as a superscript "callout" that is linked to the placement of the footnote, usually at the bottom of the immediate printed page or at the end of the Web article. Subsequent footnotes in the same topic will have the next number in sequence for their callouts. If you enter a particular character in the *callout* attribute for the footnote, that character will be used as the superscript "callout" that is linked to the placement of the footnote.
- A footnote entered with an *id* attribute is a **use-by-reference** footnote. Upon output, it does not appear anywhere unless it has been referenced using an <xref> with the *type* attribute set to "fn". The same callout behaviors will apply.
- Ordinarily, a footnote in one topic can't be referenced in another topic. The previous behaviors are local to each topic. But by using the <conref> mechanism, you can instance another topic's footnote into the local topic where it will then follow those behaviors:
  - If you use `<fn conref="thatid"></fn>` all by itself, the result will be the same as the single-use footnote entered literally in the same location.
  - If you use `<fn conref="thatid" id="thisid"></fn>`, then `<xref href="thisid" type="fn"/>`, the result will be the same as the use-by-reference model described before.

Example

The first example uses a simple fn element, with no ID and no callout attribute. In that case, markup such as the following:

```
The memory storage capacity of the computer is
2 GB<fn>A GB (gigabyte) is equal to
1000 million bytes</fn> with error correcting support.
```

may produce output similar to the following:

The memory storage capacity of the computer is 2 GB[1] with error correcting support.

. . . . . .

[1] A GB (gigabyte) is equal to 1000 million bytes

----- [bottom of page] --
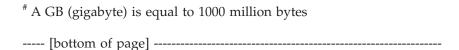
The second example uses a callout attribute. It is marked up as follows:

```
The memory storage capacity of the computer is
2 GB<fn callout="#">A GB (gigabyte) is equal to
1000 million bytes</fn> with error correcting support.
```

That DITA markup may produce output similar to the following:

The memory storage capacity of the computer is 2 GB[#] with error correcting support.

. . . . . .

^{# placeholder}

$^{\#}$ A GB (gigabyte) is equal to 1000 million bytes

----- [bottom of page] --

The third example uses an ID on a footnote, and then references that ID multiple times. The DITA markup looks like this:

```
I like pets. <fn id="reuse-fn">This is the name of an animal.</fn>
At my house, I have a dog<xref href="#topic/reuse-fn"/>, a
cat<xref href="#topic/reuse-fn"/>, and a llama<xref href="topic/reuse-fn"/>.
```

and may produce output similar to the following:

I like pets. At my house, I have a dog[1], a cat[1], and a llama[1].

......

[1]This is the name of an animal.

----- [bottom of page] --

Note: Footnote support may vary between different output types, depending on conventions and capabilities. For example, PDF output may lack support for the *callout* attribute, or footnotes may be collected as endnotes for certain types of Web publications.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, organizationname
map	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry
ditabase	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd
topic	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd
task	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, codeblock, pd
concept	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd

Doctype	Parents
reference	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, screen, codeblock, pd
glossary	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd

Inheritance:

- topic/fn

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
callout	Specifies what character is used for the footnote link, for example a number or an alpha character. The attribute may also specify a short string of characters. When no callout value is specified, footnotes are numbered.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

indexterm

An <indexterm> element allows the author to indicate that a certain word or phrase should produce an index entry in the generated index.

The content of an <indexterm> element is used to produce an index entry in the generated index. You can nest indexterm elements to create multi-level indexes. The content is not output as part of topic content, only as part of the index.

An <indexterm> element (with no start or end attribute specified) is interpreted as a point reference that will contribute the number of the current page to an index entry whose contents is the content of the indexterm. All indexterms with the same content are "merged" to form a single index entry in the resulting index, and all contributed page numbers are included in that index entry.

In the case of nested indexterms, the indexterms with no indexterm children (i.e., the "leaves") each contribute a page number to the generated index; the ancestral indexterm elements for each leaf indexterm provide the higher levels for the multilevel entry for which the leaf indexterm is the lowest level.

An indexterm that occurs in a topic prolog is interpreted as a point reference to the start of the title of the topic.

It is an error if an indexterm containing no indexterm children contains both an index-see and an index-see-also. (Note: index-see and index-see-also elements within indexterms that do contain indexterm

children are ignored.) In the case of this error condition, an implementation may (but need not) give an error message, and may (but need not) recover by treating all such index-see elements as index-see-also elements.

The start and end attribute on indexterm can be used in cases where one wishes to index an extended discussion that may continue over a number of pages. The start of a range is indicated by an indexterm with a start attribute. The end of a range is indicated with an indexterm with an end attribute whose value matches that of the start attribute on the start of range indexterm. Such markup would contribute to the generated index a page range covering all pages in the index range.

The end of range indexterm should have no content of its own; any content it has is ignored. There is no reason for the end of range indexterm to have any indexterm ancestors; however, an implementation should be able to handle an end of range indexterm nested within one or more indexterms.

The start and end attributes are defined as CDATA, though it is recommended that the values should not contain any whitespace characters (e.g., space, tab) or control characters. Matching of start and end attributes is done as a character by character comparison with all characters significant and no case folding occurring. The start and end attributes are ignored unless they occur on an indexterm element that has no child indexterm elements (i.e., a leaf indexterm).

Index range indications may occur in the topicmeta of a topicref at the map level, in the prolog of a topic, or in the body of a topic, and are interpreted as follows:

- In a map, the start range points to the start of the topic title of the topic being referenced by its containing topicref. The end range points to the end of the final child contained by the topic being referenced by its containing topicref, or to the end of the final topic referenced by the current map (whichever comes first). When a start and end range occur in the same topicmeta, the range applies to the containing topicref and its children.
- In a prolog, the start range points to the start of the containing topic's title. The range ends with a matching index range end in the same prolog, or the end of the prolog, whichever comes first. The range applies to the containing topic and all its children including child relationships defined in a map.
- In a body, the range starts where the start indexterm occurs and ends at the matching index range end indication within the same body, or at the end of the body, whichever comes first. Such an index range does not span sub-topics of the topic.

When index ranges with the same identifier overlap, the widest range applies, and end ranges are matched with start ranges by last-in-first-out. In other words, the ranges are interpreted as nested rather than overlapping with the highest-level container taking precedence over narrower contained ranges.

As defined above, there is no such thing as an index range start that isn't terminated by either a matching end or some maximum scope. There can, however, be unmatched index range end indications; these should be ignored.

Example

```
<p>An indexterm element allows the author to indicate that
a certain word or phrase should produce an index entry in the
generated index. You can nest indexterm elements to create
multi-level indexes.<indexterm>indexterm</indexterm>
<indexterm>Valid in Many Places elements<indexterm>indexterm</indexterm>
</indexterm></p>
```

Markup such as

```
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>sheeps milk
    <indexterm>pecorino</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
```

```
    <indexterm>goats milk
      <indexterm>chevre</indexterm>
    </indexterm>
</indexterm>
```

would be equivalent to

```
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>sheeps milk
    <indexterm>pecorino</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>goats milk
    <indexterm>chevre</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
```

and would be part of the input that might generate resulting index entries such as

- cheese
  - goats milk
    - chevre 14
  - sheeps milk
    - pecorino 14

Markup such as

```
<indexterm>cheese
  <indexterm>sheeps milk
    <indexterm start="level-3-pecorino">pecorino</indexterm>
  </indexterm>
</indexterm>
 . . .
<indexterm end="level-3-pecorino"/>
```

(where the ellipses represent several pages worth of input) might generate an index entry such as

- cheese
  - sheeps milk
    - pecorino 18-24

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm or index-base or index-see or index-see-also or index-sort-as) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm or index-base or index-see or index-see-also or index-sort-as) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, index-see, index-see-also, organizationname
map	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, index-see, index-see-also

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd, index-see, index-see-also
topic	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd, index-see, index-see-also
task	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, codeblock, pd, index-see, index-see-also
concept	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd, index-see, index-see-also
reference	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, abstract, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, screen, codeblock, pd, index-see, index-see-also
glossary	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, indexterm, index-base, entry, keywords, abstract, section, example, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd, index-see, index-see-also

Inheritance:

- topic/indexterm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
start	Specifies that an index entry is positioned at the beginning of a range. See the description of <indexterm> for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
end	Specifies that an index entry is positioned at the end of a range; value matches the start attribute on another indexterm. See the description of <indexterm> for more information.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

indextermref

This element is not completely defined, and is reserved for future use.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, organizationname
map	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry
ditabase	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd
topic	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd
task	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, codeblock, pd
concept	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd
reference	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, screen, codeblock, pd
glossary	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, section, example, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd

Inheritance:

- topic/indextermref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

index-base

The <index-base> element allows indexing extensions to be added by specializing off this element. It does not in itself have any meaning and should be ignored in processing.

The <index-base> element can only exist as a child of an <indexterm> element. This characteristic makes it the appropriate element to specialize to add indexing extensions. Specifically, the index-see , index-see-also, and index-sort-as elements only make sense as children of <indexterm> and so are specializations of <index-base>. Those elements are all part of the indexing domain, which is new for DITA 1.1.

On its own, <index-base> has no meaning. Processors should ignore this element and its content if encountered in its unspecialized form.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm

Inheritance:

- topic/index-base

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tm

The trademark (<tm>) element in DITA is used to markup and identify a term or phrase that is trademarked. Trademarks include registered trademarks, service marks, slogans and logos.

The business rules for indicating and displaying trademarks may differ from company to company and may be enforced by authoring policy and by specific processing.

31 May 2007

Example

```
<p>The advantages of using <tm trademark="DB2 Universal Database" tmtype="tm">
<tm trademark="DB2" tmtype="reg" tmclass="ibm">DB2</tm> Universal Database</tm> are
well known.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(text data or tm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, organizationname
map	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry
ditabase	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, keyword, term, ph, tm, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

- topic/tm

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
trademark	The trademarked term	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tmowner	The trademark owner, for example "OASIS"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
tmtype	The trademark type: trademark, registered trademark, or service mark	CDATA	(tm | reg | service | -dita-use-conref-target)	Yes
tmclass	Classification of the trademark. This may used to differentiate different groupings of trademarks.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

data-about

The <data-about> element identifies the subject of a property when the subject isn't associated with the context in which the property is specified. The property itself is expressed by the <data> element. The <data-about> element handles exception cases where a property must be expressed somewhere other than inside the actual subject of the property. The <data-about> element is particularly useful as a basis for specialization in combination with the <data> element.

Important: Do not use the <data-about> element to identify the object of a property. The href attribute of the <data> element serves that purpose.

Example

The full properties of a cited book can be maintained conveniently in the prolog:

```
<topic id="questions">
    <title>Questions and answers</title>
    <prolog>
        <data-about name="book" href="urn:isbn:0156983508">
            <data name="title">The World Doesn't End</data>
            <data name="author">
                <data name="firstname">Charles</data>
                <data name="lastname">Simic</data>
            </data>
            <data name="published" datatype="year">1989</data>
            ...
        </data-about>
        ...
    </prolog>
    <body>
        ...
        <lq href="urn:isbn:0156983508">In a forest of question marks ...
        </lq>
        ...
    </body>
</topic>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	((data) then (data or data-about) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, map, topicref, relcell, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, person, organization, summary, printlocation, bookpartno, booknumber, topichead, topicgroup, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as, organizationname, otherinfo, addressdetails, locality, localityname, administrativearea, thoroughfare, emailaddress, url
map	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, map, topicref, relcell, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, topichead, topicgroup, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
ditabase	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
reference	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

- topic/data-about

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

data

The <data> element represents a property within a DITA topic or map. While the <data> element can be used directly to capture properties, it is particularly useful as a basis for specialization. Default processing treats the property values as an unknown kind of metadata, but custom processing can match the name attribute or specialized element to format properties as sidebars or other adornments or to harvest properties for automated processing.

The subject of the property is ordinarily the container of the <data> element. In the content model for the <prolog> and <metadata> elements, the property applies to the topic as a whole. In the <topicmeta> element, the property applies to the referenced topic. You can use the <data-about> element to identify the subject of the property with an explicit reference.

The name attribute names the property for processes. You can use a <title> subelement to provide a label for the property. You can use the datatype attribute to identify the type for the value. The value of the property can be any of the following:

• A simple text value expressed with the value attribute or textual content.

• A reference to either DITA content or a non-DITA resource expressed with the href attribute.

• An image or other non-textual object.

• A brief unit of descriptive text that isn't part of the body text flow.

• A complex structure composed with nested <data> elements.

CAUTION:
The \<data> element should only be used for properties and not to embed text for formatting as part of the flow of the topic body.

Example

The structure identifies the library and version demonstrated by a code sample:

```
<codeblock><data name="exampleOf">
            <data name="library" href="ajaxLibrary.js"/>
            <data name="version" value="2006-6-19"/>
        </data>
    ...
    </codeblock>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or image or object or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or title) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or image or object or ph or title) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, map, topicref, relcell, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, bookmeta, publisherinformation, person, organization, summary, printlocation, published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent, bookpartno, booknumber, maintainer, topichead, topicgroup, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as, organizationname, otherinfo, addressdetails, locality, localityname, administrativearea, thoroughfare, emailaddress, url
map	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, map, topicref, relcell, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, topichead, topicgroup, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
ditabase	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
task	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data-about, data-about, data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

- topic/data

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

foreign

The <foreign> element is an open extension that allows information architects to incorporate existing standard vocabularies for non-textual content. like MathML and SVG, as inline objects. If <foreign> contains more than one alternative content element, they will all be processed. Specialization of <foreign> should be implemented as a domain, but for those looking for more control over the content can implement foreign vocabulary as an element specialization.

SVG Example within a <p> element

```
<p>... as in the formula
  <svg>
    <svg:svg width="100%" height="100%" version="1.1"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg">

<ellipse cx="300" cy="150" rx="200" ry="80"
style="fill:rgb(200,100,50);
stroke:rgb(0,0,100);stroke-width:2"/>

    </svg:svg>
  </svg>.
</p>
```

MathML Example within an <object> element

```
<p>... as in the formula
<object>
  <desc>4 + x</desc>
  <mathML>
    <mml:math display="block">
      <mml:mrow>
        <mml:mo>&sum;</mml:mo>
        <mml:mn>4</mml:mn>
        <mml:mo>+</mml:mo>
        <mml:mi>x</mml:mi>
      </mml:mrow>
    </mml:math>
  </mathML>
 <object>.
</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, person, organization, summary, printlocation, bookpartno, booknumber, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as, organizationname, otherinfo, addressdetails, locality, localityname, administrativearea, thoroughfare, emailaddress, url
map	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

- topic/foreign

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

unknown

The <unknown> element is an open extension that allows information architects to incorporate xml fragments that do not necessarily fit into an existing DITA use case. The base processing for <unknown> is to suppress unless otherwise instructed.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, person, organization, summary, printlocation, bookpartno, booknumber, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as, organizationname, otherinfo, addressdetails, locality, localityname, administrativearea, thoroughfare, emailaddress, url
map	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, topicmeta, linktext, searchtitle, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, refbody, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, fig, pre, lines, ph, alt, object, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, body, section, example, prolog, metadata, linktext, linkinfo, conbody, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

- topic/unknown

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 12. Specialization elements

Several DITA elements exist either for architectural reasons or for support of specialized markup yet to be designed. Although there is little need to use these elements unless you are directed to, some of them, such as <state>, can be used if your content makes use of these semantic distinctions. A discussion of signals on a gate of an integrated logic circuit, for example, might use the state element to represent either on or off conditions of that gate.

itemgroup

The <itemgroup> element is reserved for use in specializations of DITA. As a container element, it can be used to sub-divide or organize elements that occur inside a list item, definition, or parameter definition.

Example

```
<li>Second point of a list.
 <itemgroup>related discourse</itemgroup>
</li>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or p or lq or note or dl or ul or ol or sl or pre or lines or fig or image or object or table or simpletable or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	li, dd, choice, pd
topic	li, dd, pd
task	li, dd, choice, pd
concept	li, dd, pd
reference	li, dd, pd
map, bookmap	li, dd

Inheritance:

- topic/itemgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

no-topic-nesting

The <no-topic-nesting> element is a placeholder in the DITA architecture. It is not actually used by the default DITA document types; it is for use only when creating a validly customized document type where the information designer wants to eliminate the ability to nest topics. Not intended for use by authors, and has no associated output processing.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, glossary	glossentry

Inheritance:

- topic/no-topic-nesting

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

required-cleanup

A <required-cleanup> element is used as a placeholder for migrated elements that cannot be appropriately tagged without manual intervention. As the element name implies, the intent for authors is to clean up the contained material and eventually get rid of the <required-cleanup> element. Authors should not insert this element into documents.

Note: Because the content of <required-cleanup> is not considered to be verified data, **DITA processors are required to strip this element from output by default.** A runtime flag *may* be provided to allow a draft view of migrated content in context.

Example

Presuming an original HTML document had contained some content within a <center> tag (for which there is no clear migrational equivalent in DITA), the following might be the result that is valid within an XML editor, but which requires an author to decide how to better tag or revise this original content:

```
<section>
  <title>Some section title</title>
  <required-cleanup remap="center">Some original content migrated
  from a &lt;center> tag.</required-cleanup>
</section>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, organizationname
map	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry
ditabase	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd
topic	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, body, section, example, screen, codeblock, pd
task	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, codeblock, pd
concept	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, screen, codeblock, pd
reference	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, body, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, screen, codeblock, pd

Doctype	Parents
glossary	p, note, lq, sli, li, itemgroup, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, glossdef, screen, codeblock, pd

Inheritance:

- topic/required-cleanup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
remap	Indicates the element that the contents of the required-cleanup element were mapped from (provides an idea about what the new intent should be).	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

state

The <state> element specifies a name/value pair whenever it is necessary to represent a named state that has a variable value. The element is primarily intended for use in specializations to represent specific states (like logic circuit states, chemical reaction states, airplane instrumentation states, and so forth).

Example

```
<step><cmd>Verify the presence of  an "on" or high condition at the input gate
(ie,  <state name="inflag" value="high"/>)</cmd></step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, organizationname
map	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry
ditabase	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

- topic/state

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	The name of the property whose state is being described.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
value	The state of the property identified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

term

The <term> element identifies words that may have or require extended definitions or explanations. In future development of DITA, for example, terms might provide associative linking to matching glossary entries.

Example

```
<p>The <term>reference implementation</term> of DITA represents the standard,
<q>fallback</q> behaviors intended for DITA elements.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	(text data or tm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, linktext, searchtitle, person, organization, summary, printlocation, bookpartno, booknumber, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as, organizationname, otherinfo, addressdetails, locality, localityname, administrativearea, thoroughfare, emailaddress, url

Doctype	Parents
map	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, linktext, searchtitle, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

- topic/term

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

boolean

The <boolean> element is used to express one of two opposite values, such as yes or no, on or off, true or false, high or low, and so forth. The element itself is empty; the value of the element is stored in its *state* attribute, and the semantic associated with the value is typically in a specialized name derived from this element.

OASIS TC Note: This element is deprecated. It is functionally equivalent to <state value="yes|no"/>, which is recommended as its replacement in all cases.

Example

```
She said "<boolean state="yes"/>" when I asked her to marry me!
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary, map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, booklibrary, mainbooktitle, booktitlealt, organizationname
map	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry
ditabase	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Doctype	Parents
task	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

- topic/boolean

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
state	The state of the boolean element. Allowable values are: yes no	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 13. Typographic elements

The typographic elements are used to highlight text with styles (such as bold, italic, and monospace). Never use these elements when a semantically specific element is available. These elements are not intended for use by specializers, and are intended solely for use by authors when no semantically appropriate element is available and a formatting effect is required.

b

The bold (<b>) element is used to apply bold highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
<p><b>STOP!</b> This is <b>very</b> important!</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/b

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

i

The italic (<i>) element is used to apply italic highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
<p>Unplug the unit <i>before</i> placing the metal screwdriver
against the terminal screw.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Doctype	Parents
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/i

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

u

The underline (<u>) element is used to apply underline highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
Beware: <u>overuse</u> <i>of</i> <b>highlighting</b> is
sometimes known as font-itis!
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/u

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tt

The teletype (<tt>) element is used to apply monospaced highlighting to the content of the element. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper element. For example, for specific items such as GUI controls, use the <uicontrol> element. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
<p>Make sure that the screen displays <tt>File successfully created</tt> before
proceeding to the next stage of the task.</p>
```

(Tag purists may delight to point out that this example could be more correctly marked with the msgph element.)

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/tt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

sup

The superscript (<sup>) element indicates that text should be superscripted, or vertically raised in relationship to the surrounding text. Superscripts are usually a smaller font than the surrounding text. Use this element only when there is not some other more proper tag. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
The power produced by the electrohydraulic dam was 10<sup>10</sup> more than
the older electric plant.  The difference was H<sub>2</sub>O.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/sup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

sub

A subscript (<sub>) indicates that text should be subscripted, or placed lower in relationship to the surrounding text. Subscripted text is often a smaller font than the surrounding text. Formatting may vary depending on your output process. This element is part of the DITA highlighting domain.

Example

```
The power produced by the electrohydraulic dam was 10<sup>10</sup> more than
the older electric plant.  The difference was H<sub>2</sub>O.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Doctype	Parents
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph hi-d/sub

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 14. Programming elements

The programming domains elements are used to define the syntax and to give examples of programming languages.

apiname

The <apiname> element provides the name of an application programming interface (API) such as a Java class name or method name. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>Use the <apiname>document.write</apiname> method to create text
output in the dynamically constructed view.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

31 May 2007

Doctype	Parents
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/apiname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

codeblock

The <codeblock> element represents lines of program code. Like the <pre> element, content of this element has preserved line endings and is output in a monospaced font. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<codeblock>
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
  Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
glossary	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, glossdef, pd

Inheritance:

+ topic/pre pr-d/codeblock

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

codeph

The code phrase (<codeph>) element represents a snippet of code within the main flow of text. The code phrase is displayed in a monospaced font for emphasis. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>The second line of the sample program code, <codeph>Do forever</codeph>,
represents the start of a loop construct.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/codeph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

option

The <option> element describes an option that can be used to modify a command (or something else, like a configuration). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
something <option>/modifier</option>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/option

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

parmname

When referencing the name of an application programming interface parameter within the text flow of your topic, use the parameter name (<parmname>) element to markup the parameter. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
Use the <parmname>/env</parmname> parameter of the <cmdname>config</cmdname>
command to update the field value.
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, synph, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/parmname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

parml

The parameter list (<parml>) element contains a list of terms and definitions that describes the parameters in an application programming interface. This is a special kind of definition list that is designed for documenting programming parameters. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

Example source:

```
This code example is a basic method signature:
<codeblock>returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {</codeblock>
where
<parml>
 <plentry>
  <pt>pList1</pt>
  <pd>is the first variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
 </plentry>
 <plentry>
  <pt>pList2</pt>
  <pd>is the second variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
 </plentry>
</parml>
```

Example output:

This code example is a basic method signature:

```
returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {
```

where

pList1
>   is the first variable declaration passed to methodName

pList2
>   is the second variable declaration passed to methodName

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(plentry) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
glossary	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, glossdef, pd

Inheritance:

+ topic/dl pr-d/parml

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
compact	Indicates close vertical spacing between the list items. Expanded spacing is the default value. The output result of compact spacing depends on the processor or browser. Allowed values are: **yes** Indicates compact spacing. **no** Indicates expanded spacing. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

plentry

The parameter list entry element (<plentry>) contains one or more parameter terms and definitions (pd and pt). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

See "parml" on page 228.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((pt) *(one or more)* then (pd) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	parml

Inheritance:

+ topic/dlentry pr-d/plentry

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

pt

A parameter term, within a parameter list entry, is enclosed by the <pt> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

See "parml" on page 228.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or image or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	plentry

Inheritance:

+ topic/dt pr-d/pt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

pd

A parameter definition, within a parameter list entry, is enclosed by the <pd> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

See "parml" on page 228.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or p or lq or note or dl or parml or ul or ol or sl or pre or codeblock or msgblock or screen or lines or fig or syntaxdiagram or imagemap or image or object or table or simpletable or itemgroup or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	plentry

Inheritance:

+ topic/dd pr-d/pd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

synph

The syntax phrase (<synph>) element is a container for syntax definition elements. It is used when a complete syntax diagram is not needed, but some of the syntax elements, such as kwd, oper, delim, are used within the text flow of the topic content. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

<synph><kwd>format</kwd> <var>volumename</var>**</synph>**

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or codeph or option or parmname or var or kwd or oper or delim or sep or synph) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, synph, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/synph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

syntaxdiagram

The syntax diagram (<syntaxdiagram>) element is the main container for all the syntax elements that make up a syntax definition. The syntax diagram represents the syntax of a statement from a computer language, or a command, function call or programming language statement. Traditionally, the syntax diagram is formatted with "railroad tracks" that connect the units of the syntax together, but this presentation may differ depending on the output media. The syntax diagram element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice> <var>input-filename</var> <kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice> <var>output-filename</var> <kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (groupseq or groupchoice or groupcomp or fragref or fragment or synblk or synnote or synnoteref) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, glossdef, pd
topic	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, pd
task	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, pd
reference	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, pd
glossary	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, glossdef, pd

Inheritance:

+ topic/fig pr-d/syntaxdiagram

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

groupseq

The <groupseq> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. Within the syntax definition, groups of keywords, delimiters and other syntax units act as a combined unit, and they occur in a specific sequence, as delimited by the <groupseq> element. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (repsep) *(optional)* then (groupseq or groupchoice or groupcomp or fragref or kwd or var or delim or oper or sep or synnote or synnoteref) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/groupseq

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

groupchoice

The <groupchoice> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. A group choice specifies that the user must make a choice about which part of the syntax to use. Groups are often nested. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (repsep) *(optional)* then (groupseq or groupchoice or groupcomp or fragref or kwd or var or delim or oper or sep or synnote or synnoteref) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/groupchoice

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

groupcomp

The <groupcomp> element is part of the subset of elements that define syntax diagrams in DITA. A group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. The group composite means that the items that make up the syntax diagram will be formatted close together rather than being separated by a horizontal or vertical line, which is the usual formatting method. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (repsep) *(optional)* then (groupseq or groupchoice or groupcomp or fragref or kwd or var or delim or oper or sep or synnote or synnoteref) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/groupcomp

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

fragment

Within a syntax definition, a <fragment> is a labeled subpart of the syntax. The <fragment> element allows breaking out logical chunks of a large syntax diagram into named fragments. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="none">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <fragment>
  <groupchoice><kwd>*OVERLAP</kwd><kwd>*Prompt</kwd></groupchoice>
 </fragment>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (groupseq or groupchoice or groupcomp or fragref or synnote or synnoteref) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/fragment

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

fragref

The fragment reference (<fragref>) element provides a logical reference to a syntax definition fragment so that you can reference a syntax fragment multiple times, or pull a large section of syntax out of line for easier reading. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

This markup example:

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="none">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <fragref href="#syntax/overlay"></fragref>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <fragment id="overlay">
  <title>Overlay</title>
  <groupchoice><kwd>*OVERLAP</kwd><kwd>*Prompt</kwd></groupchoice>
 </fragment>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

produces the following output:

```
CopyFile

>>-COPYF--input-filename*INFILE--output-filename--*OUTFILE------>

>--| Overlay |--+-input-filename-+--+-output-filename-+-------->< 
               '-*INFILE-------'  '-*OUTFILE-------'

Overlay

|--+-*OVERLAP-+-----------------------------------------------|
   '-*Prompt--'
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

+ topic/xref pr-d/fragref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	A reference to a syntax diagram fragment element. The referenced fragment should be in the same diagram as the fragref element. The href attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the ID of the matching syntax diagram fragment: `href="#topicid/fragmentid"`	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See this topic for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

synblk

The syntax block (<synblk>) element organizes small pieces of a syntax definition into a larger piece. The syntax block element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<synblk>
<groupseq><kwd>this</kwd><sep>-</sep><kwd>is</kwd><sep>-</sep><kwd>a</kwd>
<sep>-</sep><var>test</var></groupseq>
</synblk>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((title) *(optional)* then (groupseq or groupchoice or groupcomp or fragref or fragment or synnote or synnoteref) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup pr-d/synblk

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

synnote

The syntax note (<synnote>) element contains a note (similar to a footnote) within a syntax definition group or fragment. The syntax note explains aspects of the syntax that cannot be expressed in the markup itself. The note will appear at the bottom of the syntax diagram instead of at the bottom of the page. The syntax block element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<groupcomp><var>one</var><var>two</var><var>three</var></groupcomp>
<synnote>My first syntax note.</synnote>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or tm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

+ topic/fn pr-d/synnote

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
callout	Specifies what character is used for the footnote link, for example a number or an alpha character. The attribute may also specify a short string of characters. When no callout value is specified, footnotes are numbered.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

synnoteref

The syntax note (<synnoteref>) reference element references a syntax note element (<synnote>) that has already been defined elsewhere in the syntax diagram. The same notation can be used in more than one syntax definition. The syntax note reference element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<synnoteref href="#topicid/mysyn"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	syntaxdiagram, synblk, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp, fragment

Inheritance:

+ topic/xref pr-d/synnoteref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	Points to the target syntax note (<synnote>), which must be in the same syntax diagram. Use standard DITA href syntax for targeting the element: href="#topicid/synnoteid"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

kwd

The <kwd> element defines a keyword within a syntax diagram. A keyword must be typed or output, either by the user or application, exactly as specified in the syntax definition. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword pr-d/kwd

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

var

Within a syntax diagram, the <var> element defines a variable for which the user must supply content, such as their user name or password. It is represented in output in an italic font. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
 <title>CopyFile</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
 <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
 <groupchoice><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
 <groupchoice><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/var

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

oper

The operator (<oper>) element defines an operator within a syntax definition. Typical operators are equals (=), plus (+) or multiply (*). This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Adding</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var>
<delim>=</delim><kwd>something</kwd>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/oper

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

delim

Within a syntax diagram, the delimiter (<delim>) element defines a character marking the beginning or end of a section or part of the complete syntax. Typical delimiter characters are the parenthesis, comma, tab, vertical bar or other special characters. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
 <title>Adding</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><var>two</var><delim>=</delim>
 <kwd>something</kwd>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/delim

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See this topic for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

sep

The separator (<sep>) element defines a separator character that is inline with the content of a syntax diagram. The separator occurs between keywords, operators or groups in a syntax definition. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<syntaxdiagram>
 <title>Adding</title>
 <groupseq><kwd>1</kwd><oper>+</oper><sep>(</sep><var>two</var><sep>)</sep>
<delim>=</delim><kwd>something</kwd></groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	synph, groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/sep

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or default. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | default | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

repsep

The repeat separator (<repsep>) element in a syntax diagram defines a group of syntax elements that can (or should) be repeated. If the <repsep> element contains a separator character, such as a plus (+), this indicates that the character must be used between repetitions of the syntax elements. This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

In this example, the group may be repeated. When repeated, a comma should be used between selections.

```
<groupchoice>
  <repsep>,</repsep>
  <kwd>This</kwd>
  <kwd>That</kwd>
  <kwd>The other</kwd>
</groupchoice>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	groupseq, groupchoice, groupcomp

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph pr-d/repsep

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	The attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. Output processors may indicate this designation in a generated diagram. See this topic for more information on the conref value.	optional | required | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 15. Software elements

The software domain elements are used to describe the operation of a software program.

msgph

The message phrase (<msgph>) element contains the text content of a message produced by an application or program. It can also contain the variable name (varname) element to illustrate where variable text content can occur in the message. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the
text message, <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/msgph

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

msgblock

The message block (<msgblock>) element contains a multi-line message or set of messages. The message block can contain multiple message numbers and message descriptions, each enclosed in a <msgnum> and <msgph> element. It can also contain the message content directly. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>A sequence of failed password attempts generates the following
characteristic message stream:</p>
<msgblock>
I:0
S:3
I:1
S:3
I:1
S:4
S:99 (lockup)
</msgblock>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd

Doctype	Parents
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
glossary	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, glossdef, pd

Inheritance:

+ topic/pre sw-d/msgblock

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

msgnum

The message number (<msgnum>) element contains the number of a message produced by an application or program. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the
text message, <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword sw-d/msgnum

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

cmdname

The command name (<cmdname>) element specifies the name of a command when it is part of a software discussion. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword sw-d/cmdname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

varname

The variable name (<varname>) element defines a variable that must be supplied to a software application. The variable name element is very similar to the variable (var) element, but variable name is used outside of syntax diagrams. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<filepath>
  <varname>install-dir</varname>\projects\working\<varname>project-dir</varname>
      \source\<varname>filename</varname>.java
</filepath>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword sw-d/varname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

filepath

The <filepath> element indicates the name and optionally the location of a referenced file by specifying the directory containing the file, and other directories that may precede it in the system hierarchy. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>Uncompress the <filepath>gbbrsh.gz</filepath> file to the
<filepath>/usr</filepath> directory. Ensure that the
<filepath>/usr/tools/data.cfg</filepath> path is listed in
the execution path system variable.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/filepath

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

userinput

The user input (<userinput>) element represens the text a user should input in response to a program or system prompt. This element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>After you type <userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>, the meal planning program
will print a <systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput> message.
Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan,
for example, <userinput>Thursday</userinput>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/userinput

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

systemoutput

The system output (<systemoutput>) element represents computer output or responses to a command or situation. A generalized element, it represents any kind of output from the computer, so the author may wish to choose more specific markup, such as msgph, for messages from the application. The system output element is part of the DITA software domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document software tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<p>After you type <userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>, the meal planning program
will print a <systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput> message.
Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan,
for example, <userinput>Thursday</userinput>.</p>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph sw-d/systemoutput

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 16. User interface elements

The user interface domain elements are used to describe the user interface of a software program.

uicontrol

The user interface control (<uicontrol>) element is used to mark up names of buttons, entry fields, menu items, or other objects that allow the user to control the interface. Use the <uicontrol> element inside a <menucascade> element to identify a sequence of menu choices in a nested menu, such as **File → New**. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

Press the **<uicontrol>**OK**</uicontrol>** button.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or image or shortcut) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, menucascade, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, menucascade, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, menucascade, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, menucascade, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, menucascade, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, menucascade, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph ui-d/uicontrol

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

wintitle

The window title <wintitle> element can be used to mark up names of windows or dialogs, or other user interface elements at the same level of grouping, including wizard titles, wizard page titles, and window pane titles. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

```
<step>
  <cmd>Click <uicontrol>Configure</uicontrol>.</cmd>
  <stepresult>The <wintitle>Configuration Options</wintitle> window
  opens with your last set of selections highlighted.</stepresult>
</step>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Doctype	Parents
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, alt, stentry, draft-comment, fn, indexterm, index-base, cite, xref, entry, author, source, publisher, copyrholder, category, keywords, prodname, brand, series, platform, prognum, featnum, component, navtitle, searchtitle, abstract, section, example, linktext, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, uicontrol, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, var, oper, delim, sep, pt, pd, fragref, synnote, repsep, msgph, msgblock, filepath, userinput, systemoutput, coords, index-see, index-see-also, index-sort-as

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword ui-d/wintitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

menucascade

The <menucascade> element is used to document a series of menu choices. The <menucascade> element contains one or more user interface control (<uicontrol>) elements, for example: `Start > Programs > Accessories > Notepad`. If there is more than one <uicontrol> element, the formatter shows connecting characters between the menu items to represent the menu cascade. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

This example:

```
<menucascade>
 <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol>Programs</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol>Accessories</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol>Notepad</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

produces this output: **Start** → **Programs** → **Accessories** → **Notepad**

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(uicontrol) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
topic	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
task	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, cmd, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
concept	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote
reference	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, proptype, propvalue, propdesc, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Doctype	Parents
glossary	data, title, shortdesc, desc, p, note, lq, q, sli, li, itemgroup, dthd, ddhd, dt, dd, figgroup, pre, lines, ph, stentry, draft-comment, fn, cite, xref, entry, abstract, section, example, linkinfo, glossterm, glossdef, screen, b, u, i, tt, sup, sub, codeph, codeblock, pt, pd, fragref, synnote

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph ui-d/menucascade

Attributes

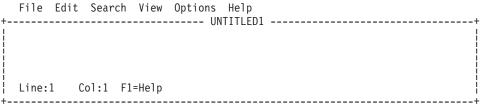| Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

shortcut

The <shortcut> element identifies a keyboard shortcut for a menu or window action. This element is part of the DITA user interface domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document user interface tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

This example:

```
<menucascade>
 <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
 <uicontrol><shortcut>P</shortcut>rograms</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

produces the following reusult: **Start** → **Programs**

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	uicontrol

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword ui-d/shortcut

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

screen

The <screen> element contains or refers to a textual representation of a computer screen or user interface panel (window).

Use <screen> to contain representations of text-based online panels, text consoles ("term" or "curses" windows, for example), or other text-based user interface components. The default print representation is to enclose the screen within a box, suggesting a computer display screen. In contrast to graphical screen captures normally used to represent GUI parts (see the image element description), this element specifically supports constructions for which text is the primary content.

This element is part of the DITA programming domain, a special set of DITA elements designed to document programming tasks, concepts and reference information.

Example

This example demonstrates using the <screen> element to represent a DOS edit session, where this code:

```
<p>Type "edit" after the command line prompt and press Enter.  The following
editing interface will be displayed.</p>
<screen>
   File  Edit  Search  View  Options  Help
+------------------------------ UNTITLED1 ------------------------------+
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦  Line:1    Col:1  F1=Help                                             ¦
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
</screen>
```

produces this output:

Type "edit" after the command line prompt and press Enter. The following editing interface will be displayed.

```
  File  Edit  Search  View  Options  Help
+------------------------------ UNTITLED1 ------------------------------+
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦                                                                       ¦
¦  Line:1    Col:1  F1=Help                                             ¦
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or ph or codeph or synph or filepath or msgph or userinput or systemoutput or b or u or i or tt or sup or sub or uicontrol or menucascade or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, glossdef, pd
topic	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, pd
task	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, pd
reference	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, propdesc, pd
glossary	desc, p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, fig, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, linkinfo, conbody, glossdef, pd

Inheritance:

+ topic/pre ui-d/screen

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, xml:space	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 17. Utilities elements

The utilities domain elements represent common features of a language that may not necessarily be semantic, such as image maps.

imagemap

The imagemap element supports the basic functionality of the HTML "client-side" image map markup. Imagemap allows you to designate a linkable area or region over an image, allowing a link in that region to display another topic.

An HTML client-side image map binds an image to the navigation structure (the ″map″) by means of an ID association from the map to the image. In contrast, the DITA version of imagemap markup simply includes the target image as the first required element in the markup, followed by a sequence of area elements that represent the links associated with the contained image.

An imagemap structure can be output either to a standard HTML image map or to alternative forms of navigation (such as table-based image maps). When output as PDF, the minimal form would be to represent at least the image; advanced PDF output processors should be able to provide equivalent region-oriented hyperlinks.

The xref content contains the intended alternative text or hover text for the map area.

Example

A simple imagemap looks like this (note that the rendering will depend on how this markup is supported for particular output formats):

```
<imagemap>
 <image href="imagemapworld.jpg"></image>
 <area><shape>rect</shape><coords>2,0,53,59</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s1.xml">Section 1</xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>rect</shape><coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
  <xref href="d1-s2.xml"></xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>rect</shape><coords>54,62,114,116</coords>
  <xref href="#inline" type="topic"></xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>circle</shape><coords>120,154,29</coords>
  <xref format="html" href="test.html"></xref>
 </area>
 <area><shape>poly</shape>
  <coords>246,39,200,35,173,52,177,86,215,90,245,84,254,65</coords>
  <xref format="pdf" href="test.pdf"></xref>
 </area>
</imagemap>
```

The areas defined correspond to this graphic image; with the areas visible:

The values for use in the shape and coords elements must follow the guidelines defined for image maps in HTML 4.1, Client-side image maps: the MAP and AREA elements

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((image) then (area) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, glossdef, pd
topic	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, pd
task	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, prereq, context, info, tutorialinfo, stepxmp, choice, choptionhd, chdeschd, choption, chdesc, stepresult, result, postreq, pd
concept	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, pd
reference	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, refsyn, proptypehd, propvaluehd, propdeschd, pd
glossary	p, note, lq, li, itemgroup, dd, stentry, draft-comment, fn, entry, abstract, body, section, example, conbody, glossdef, pd

Inheritance:

+ topic/fig ut-d/imagemap

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
spectitle	The specialized title attribute allows architects of specialized types to define a fixed or default title for a specialized element. Not intended for direct use by authors.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%display-atts; (scale, frame, expanse)	A set of related attributes, described at "%display-atts;" on page 465	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

area

The area element supports the basic functionality of the HTML image map markup.

Example

```
<area>
 <shape>rect</shape>
 <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
 <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	((shape) then (coords) then (xref))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	imagemap

Inheritance:

+ topic/figgroup ut-d/area

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

coords

The coords element specifies the coordinates of the linkable region in an imagemap area.

The element defines the starting point and size of that area. It uses the following data for the appropriate shapes:

Shape Data format

rect left-x, top-y, right-x, bottom-y

circle center-x, center-y, radius

poly x1, y1, x2, y2, ..., xN, yN. The first x and y coordinate pair and the last should be the same to close the polygon.

Pixels are recommended; they appear to work with all browsers.

Note: The behavior of image maps will depend on the browser on which they are rendered.

This element contains text data representing HTML coordinate data for image maps. The syntax of the coordinate data depends on the shape described by the coordinates.

Example

```
<area>
 <shape>rect</shape>
 <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
 <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	area

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph ut-d/coords

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

shape

The shape element defines the shape of a linkable area in an imagemap.

The shape element supports these values:

rect Define a rectangular region. If you leave the shape element blank, this is assumed.

circle Define a circular region.

poly Define a polygonal region.

default
 Indicates the entire diagram.

Example

```
<area>
 <shape>rect</shape>
 <coords>54,1,117,60</coords>
 <xref href="d1-s2.dita"></xref>
</area>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept, glossary	(text data)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	area

Inheritance:

+ topic/keyword ut-d/shape

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. Setting to "yes" will override the default. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value; because this element uses an actual default, it will always be treated as translate="no" unless overridden as described.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	"no"	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 18. Indexing group elements

The indexing domain provides several new elements for use with indexing. The new elements allow authors to define ″See″ and ″See also″ references, and to override the default sort order for a term.

Indexing domain elements typically work with the indexterm and index-base elements; information on those elements can be found using the links below.

Related reference

″indexterm″ on page 184
An <indexterm> element allows the author to indicate that a certain word or phrase should produce an index entry in the generated index.

″index-base″ on page 188
The <index-base> element allows indexing extensions to be added by specializing off this element. It does not in itself have any meaning and should be ignored in processing.

index-see

An <index-see> element within an <indexterm> redirects the reader to another index entry that the reader should reference instead of the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements allow a form of redirection to another index entry within the generated index. The <index-see> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *instead of* the current one, whereas the <index-see-also> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *in addition to* the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements are ignored if their parent indexterm element contains any indexterm children.

Because an index-see indicates a redirection to use instead of the current entry, it is an error if, for any index-see, there is also an index-see-also or an indexterm for the same index entry (i.e., with an identical sort key). An implementation may (but need not) give an error message, and may (but need not) recover from this error condition by treating the index-see as an index-see-also.

It is not an error for there to be multiple index-see elements for a single index entry.

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see> redirection element within an <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Carassius auratus
   <index-see>Goldfish</index-see>
</indexterm>
```

This will typically generate an index entry without a page reference:

- Carassius auratus, *see* Goldfish

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see> redirection element to a more complex (multilevel) <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Feeding goldfish
   <index-see>Goldfish <indexterm>feeding</indexterm></index-see>
</indexterm>
```

This is part of the indexing markup that might generate index entries such as:

- Feeding goldfish
  - *see* Goldfish feeding

297

- Goldfish
  - feeding, 56
  - flushing, 128, 345

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm

Inheritance:

+ topic/index-base indexing-d/index-see

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

index-see-also

An <index-see-also> element within an <indexterm> redirects the reader to another index entry that the reader should reference in addition to the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements allow a form of redirection to another index entry within the generated index. The <index-see> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *instead of* the current one, whereas the <index-see-also> element refers to an index entry that the reader should use *in addition to* the current one.

The <index-see> and <index-see-also> elements are ignored if their parent indexterm element contains any indexterm children.

In addition to its "see also" redirection, an index-see-also functions as a pointwise indexterm, thereby typically generating a page reference as well as the "see also" indication.

It is not an error for there to be multiple index-see-also elements for a single index entry.

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see-also> redirection element within an <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Carp
    <index-see-also>Goldfish</index-see-also>
</indexterm>
```

This will typically generate a page reference to "Carp" and a redirection:

- Carp, 56
  - *see also* Goldfish

The following example illustrates the use of an <index-see-also> redirection element to a more complex (multilevel) <indexterm>:

```
<indexterm>Feeding
    <index-see-also>Goldfish <indexterm>feeding</indexterm></index-see-also>
</indexterm>
```

This is part of the indexing markup that might generate index entries such as:

- Feeding, 348
  - *see also* Goldfish feeding
- Goldfish
  - feeding, 56
  - flushing, 128, 345

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or indexterm) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm

Inheritance:

+ topic/index-base indexing-d/index-see-also

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

index-sort-as

The <index-sort-as> element specifies a sort phrase under which an index entry would be sorted.

This element gives an author the flexibility to sort an index entry in an index differently from how its text normally would be sorted. The common use for this is to disregard insignificant leading text, such as punctuation or words like "the" or "a". For example, the author may want <data> to be sorted under the letter D rather than the left angle bracket (<). An author may want to include such an entry under both the punctuation heading and the letter D, in which case there can be two index entry directives differentiated only by the sort order.

Certain languages may have special sort order needs. For example, Japanese index entries might be written partially or wholly in kanji, but need to be sorted in phonetic order according to its hiragana/katakana rendition. There is no reliable automated way to map written to phonetic text: for kanji text, there can be multiple phonetic possibilities depending on the context. The only way to correctly sort Japanese index entries is to keep the phonetic counterparts with the written forms. The phonetic text would be presented as the sort order text for indexing purposes.

The <index-sort-as> element's content is logically augmented by the textual content of its parent <indexterm> element to produce the effective sort key (i.e., the textual content acts as a secondary sort field), so two indexterms with different content but the same <index-sort-as> value would never merge into a single index entry.

An <index-sort-as> element provides sort key information for the indexterm that is its parent; therefore, in a multiple level indexterm, the index-sort-as only affects the level in which it occurs.

It is an error if there is more than one index-sort-as child for a given indexterm. An implementation may (but need not) give an error message, and may (but need not) recover from this error condition by ignoring all but the last index-sort-as.

This is an example of an index entry for <data> that will be sorted as "data":

```
<indexterm>&lt;data&gt;<index-sort-as>data</index-sort-as></indexterm>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
ditabase, topic, task, reference, concept	(text data or keyword or option or parmname or apiname or cmdname or msgnum or varname or wintitle or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*
map, bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

31 May 2007

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map, ditabase, topic, task, concept, reference, glossary	indexterm

Inheritance:

+ topic/index-base indexing-d/index-sort-as

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 19. Map elements

A map describes the relationships among a set of DITA topics. The following are some examples of relationships that can be described in a map:

- Hierarchical (Parent/Child). Nested topics create a hierarchical relationship. The topic that does the nesting is the parent, and the topics that are nested are the children.
- Ordered. Child topics can be labeled as having an ordered relationship, which means they are referenced in a definite sequence.
- Family. Child topics can be labeled as having a family relationship, which means they all refer to each other.

The relationships defined in a map can be used to create a Table of Contents (TOC), aggregate topics into a PDF document, or to create links between topics in output.

map

The <map> element is used to define a map which describes the relationships among a set of resources, such as DITA topics. Maps consist of references to topics and other resources organized into hierarchies, groups, and tables. Maps provide a way to express these relationships in a single common format that can be used for different outputs.

The containing element for a map is the <map> element, which can take title and id attributes. Within the map, use the <topicref> element to add and organize references to the topics, and the <topicgroup> and <reltable> elements to provide non-hierarchical relationships. You can use the <map> element to set default attribute values for all <topicref> elements in the map.

The title element may optionally be used to provide a title for the map. The title element is allowed beginning with DITA 1.1, and is preferred over the title attribute. In some scenarios the title is purely informational, and is present as an aid to the author. In other scenarios it may be useful or even required. For example, if a map is converted to Eclipse Help, the Eclipse system will require a title for the resulting table of contents. In the bookmap specialization of map, the title element provides a title for the book represented by that map.

Example

In this example, there are six topicrefs. They are nested and have a hierarchical relationship. The file bats.dita is the parent topic and the other topics are its children. The hierarchy could be used to generate a PDF, a navigation pane in an information center, a summary of the topics, or related links between the parent topic and its children.

```
<map id="mybats">
 <title>Bats</title>
 <topicref href="bats.dita" type="topic">
  <topicref href="batcaring.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batfeeding.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batsonar.dita" type="concept"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batguano.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
  <topicref href="bathistory.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((title) *(optional)* then (topicmeta) *(optional)* then (navref or anchor or topicref or topichead or topicgroup or reltable or data or data-about) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((title) *(optional)* then (topicmeta) *(optional)* then (navref or anchor or topicref or topichead or topicgroup or reltable or data or data-about) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

Inheritance:

- map/map

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
title	An identifying title for the map. May be used or ignored, depending on the capabilities of the display mechanism. Note that in DITA 1.1, the map can include a title element, which is preferred over the title attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
id	This attribute may be used for debugging purposes, for example to identify which map a link was generated from.	ID	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a map that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
anchorref	Identifies a location within another map file where this map will be anchored (added at runtime, using Eclipse navigation integration). For example, `anchorref="map1.ditamap/a1"` causes this map to be pulled into the location of the anchor point a1 in the other map1.ditamap.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http:// dita.oasis-open.org/ architecture/ 2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(map mapgroup-d) (topic indexing-d)	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

anchor

The <anchor> element is used for runtime integration of navigation. It provides an integration point that another map can point to in order to insert its navigation into the current navigation tree. For those familiar with Eclipse help systems, this serves the same purpose as the <anchor> element in that system. It may not be supported for all output formats.

For build-time integration, you can use the conref attribute on an element inside the map (for example, a topicref) to pull in content from a matching element (for example, another topicref) in another map.

Example

In this example, an anchor is defined with an ID of ″a1″. This ID can be referenced by the anchorref attribute on another map's map element.

```
<map title="MyComponent tasks">
 <topicref navtitle="Start here" href="start.dita" toc="yes">
  <navref mapref="othermap2.ditamap"/>
  <navref mapref="othermap3.ditamap"/>
  <anchor id="a1"/>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	map, topicref, topichead, topicgroup

Inheritance:

- map/anchor

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	Provides an integration point that another map may reference in order to insert its navigation into the current navigation tree. The anchorref attribute on a map may be used to reference this attribute.	NMTOKEN	#REQUIRED	Yes
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

navref

The <navref> represents a pointer to another map which should be preserved as a transcluding link rather than resolved. Output formats that support such linking will integrate the target when displaying the referencing map to an end user.

For example, if a map is converted to the Eclipse help system format, the DITA element `<navref mapref="other.ditamap"/>` should be converted to the Eclipse element `<link toc="other.xml"/>`. When Eclipse loads the referencing map, it will replace this link element with the contents of other.xml, provided that other.xml is available.

Note that not all output formats will support such linking. In order to include target maps directly without depending on the output format, you may reference the map with a topicref while setting the format attribute to "ditamap". For example, the following markup represents a literal inclusion of the map "other.ditamap" (similar to a conref):

```
<topicref href="other.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Example

In this example, the map titled ″MyComponent tasks″ references the maps ″othermap2.ditamap″ and ″othermap3.ditamap″.

```
<map title="MyComponent tasks">
 <navref mapref="../com.ibm.xml.doc/othermap1.ditamap"/>
 <navref mapref="../com.ibm.xml.doc/othermap2.ditamap"/>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	map, topicref, topichead, topicgroup

Inheritance:

- map/navref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
mapref	Specifies the URL (local filename, at least) of the map file to reference. It may point to a DITA map, or to a file that is appropriate for your output format (such as XML TOC file for Eclipse output).	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

reltable

The relationship table (<reltable>) defines relationships between topics, based on the familiar table model of rows (<relrow>), columns (<relheader>), and cells (<relcell>). The <relcell> elements can contain <topicref> elements, which are then related to other <topicref> elements in the same row (although not necessarily in the same cell). By default, the contents of a <reltable> element are not output for navigation or TOC purposes, and are used only to define relationships that can be expressed as topic-to-topic links.

Relationship tables can be used in conjunction with hierarchies and groups to manage all the related links in an information set.

Example

In this example, a relationship table is defined with three columns; one for ″concept″, one for ″task″, and one for ″reference″. Three cells are defined within one row. The first cell contains one concept topic: batsonar.dita. The second cell contains two task topics: batcaring.dita and batfeeding.dita. The third cell contains two reference topics: batguano.dita and bathistory.dita.

```
<map>
 <reltable>
  <relheader>
   <relcolspec type="concept"/>
   <relcolspec type="task"/>
   <relcolspec type="reference"/>
  </relheader>
  <relrow>
   <relcell><topicref href="batsonar.dita"/></relcell>
   <relcell>
     <topicref href="batcaring.dita"/>
     <topicref href="batfeeding.dita"/>
   </relcell>
   <relcell>
     <topicref href="batguano.dita"/>
     <topicref href="bathistory.dita"/>
   </relcell>
  </relrow>
 </reltable>
</map>
```

A table view of the tagging would look like this:

type=″concept″	type=″task″	type=″reference″
batsonar.dita	batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita	batguano.dita, bathistory.dita

On output, links should be added to topics that are in the same row, but not in the same cell. This allows simple maintenance of parallel relationships: for example, in this case, batcaring.dita and batfeeding.dita are two tasks that require the same supporting information (concept and reference topics) but might otherwise be unrelated. When topics in the same cell are in fact related, the cell's collection-type attribute can be set to family. If some cells or columns are intended solely as supporting information and should not link back to topics in other cells, you can set the linking attribute on the cell or relcolspec to targetonly.

In this example, the related links would be as follows:

batsonar.dita
>   batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita, batguano.dita, bathistory.dita

batcaring.dita
>   batsonar.dita, batguano.dita, bathistory.dita

batfeeding.dita
>   batsonar.dita, batguano.dita, bathistory.dita

batguano.dita
>   batsonar.dita, batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita

bathistory.dita
>   batsonar.dita, batcaring.dita, batfeeding.dita

Although the table may initially take some time to learn and manipulate, it is inherently a more efficient form to manage these links. It is also easier to see and manage patterns using the table; for example, the fact that batfeeding.dita and batcaring.dita have the same relationships to supporting information is clear

from the table, but would require some comparison and counting to determine from just the definition list summary.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (relheader) *(optional)* then (relrow) *(one or more)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map, bookmap
map	map

Inheritance:

- map/reltable

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
title	An identifying title for this element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts-no-toc; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A related set of attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

relrow

A <relrow> is a row in the relationship table. This creates a relationship between the cells in the row, which will end up expressed as links among the <topicref> elements in the cells.

Example

See "reltable" on page 307.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(relcell) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	reltable

Inheritance:

- map/relrow

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

---

relcell

A <relcell> element is a cell in the relationship table. The <topicref> elements it contains will be related to topicrefs in other cells of the same row. By default, topicrefs in the same cell are not related to each other, unless you change the relcell's collection-type attribute to indicate that they are related.

Example

See "reltable" on page 307.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicref or topichead or topicgroup or data or data-about) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicref or topichead or topicgroup or data or data-about) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	relrow

Inheritance:

- map/relcell

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

relheader

The <relheader> element is a row of column definitions (<relcolspec> elements) in a relationship table. Each table can have only one set of column definitions.

Example

See "reltable" on page 307.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(relcolspec) *(one or more)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	reltable

Inheritance:

- map/relheader

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

relcolspec

A column definition in the relationship table. You can use <relcolspec> column definitions to set defaults for the attributes of <topicref> elements in the column. For example, you can set type="concept" to treat all untyped <topicref> elements in the column as concepts.

When default values are specified on a <relcell> or <relrow> element, those values are inherited before those on the <relcolspec>. The values on a <relcolspec> are inherited before those on the <reltable>.

Example

See "reltable" on page 307.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map, bookmap	(topicmeta) *(optional)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap, map	relheader

Inheritance:

- map/relcolspec

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

topicmeta

The <topicmeta> element defines the metadata that applies to a topic when it appears in a map, and to the other topics in the map that are contained by the same element that contains the <topicmeta> element. When creating links, it can also be used to override the title and short description of the topic. In addition, it can be used to add index entries to referenced content using the <keywords> element.

Example

In this example, the metadata defined by the topicmeta element applies to the associated <topicref> (bats.dita) and all of its children. The <topicmeta> element contains an audience definition which indicates that bats.dita and its children are of interest to experienced programmers who are troubleshooting.

```
<map>
 <topicref href="bats.dita">
  <topicmeta>
   <audience type="programmer" job="troubleshooting" experiencelevel="expert"/>
  </topicmeta>
  <topicref href="batcaring.dita"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batfeeding.dita"></topicref>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((linktext) *(optional)* then (searchtitle) *(optional)* then (shortdesc) *(optional)* then (author) *(any number)* then (source) *(optional)* then (publisher) *(optional)* then (copyright) *(any number)* then (critdates) *(optional)* then (permissions) *(optional)* then (audience) *(any number)* then (category) *(any number)* then (keywords) *(any number)* then (prodinfo) *(any number)* then (othermeta) *(any number)* then (resourceid) *(any number)* then (data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((linktext) *(optional)* then (searchtitle) *(optional)* then (shortdesc) *(optional)* then (author or authorinformation) *(any number)* then (source) *(optional)* then (publisher) *(optional)* then (copyright) *(any number)* then (critdates) *(optional)* then (permissions) *(optional)* then (audience) *(any number)* then (category) *(any number)* then (keywords) *(any number)* then (prodinfo) *(any number)* then (othermeta) *(any number)* then (resourceid) *(any number)* then (data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map, topicref, reltable, relcolspec, draftintro, preface, chapter, part, appendix, notices, glossarylist, topichead, topicgroup
map	map, topicref, reltable, relcolspec, topichead, topicgroup

Inheritance:

- map/topicmeta

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
lockmeta	Indicates whether any of the meta information should be replaced by meta information in the referenced topic.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

topicref

The <topicref> element identifies a topic (such as a concept, task, or reference) or other resource. A <topicref> can contain other<topicref> elements, allowing you to express navigation or table-of-contents hierarchies, as well as implying relationships between the containing <topicref> and its children. You can set the collection-type of a container <topicref> to determine how its children are related to each other. You can also express relationships among <topicref>s using group and table structures (using <topicgroup> and <reltable>). Relationships end up expressed as links in the output (with each participant in a relationship having links to the other participants by default).

You can fine tune the output from your map by setting different attributes on topicrefs: for example, the *linking* attribute controls how its relationships to other topicrefs are expressed as links, and the *toc* attribute controls whether the topicref shows up in TOC or navigation output.

Example

In this example, there are six topicrefs. They are nested and have a hierarchical relationship. Bats.dita is the parent topic and the other topics are its children.

```
<map title="Bats">
 <topicref href="bats.dita" type="topic">
  <topicref href="batcaring.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batfeeding.dita" type="task"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batsonar.dita" type="concept"></topicref>
  <topicref href="batguano.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
  <topicref href="bathistory.dita" type="reference"></topicref>
 </topicref>
</map>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup or navref or anchor or data or data-about) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup or navref or anchor or data or data-about) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map, topicref, relcell, frontmatter, backmatter, draftintro, preface, chapter, part, appendix, notices, glossarylist, topichead, topicgroup
map	map, topicref, relcell, topichead, topicgroup

Inheritance:

- map/topicref

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A pointer to the resource represented by the <topicref>. References to DITA content cannot be below the topic level: that is, you cannot reference individual elements inside a topic. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 20. Map group elements

The mapgroup domain elements represent particular containment strategies within a set of topicrefs in a map.

topicgroup

The <topicgroup> element is for creating groups of <topicref> elements without affecting the hierarchy, as opposed to nested <topicref> elements within a <topicref>, which does imply a structural hierarchy. It is typically used outside a hierarchy to identify groups for linking without affecting the resulting toc/navigation output.

In the following example, each of the topicref elements inherit the audience and linking attribute values. This way the attributes can be set in one place for a group of topicref elements, without affecting the navigation hierarchy.

```
<topicgroup audience="novice" linking="none">
  <topicref href="this.dita"/>
  <topicref href="that.dita"/>
  <topicref href="theother.dita"/>
</topicgroup>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup or navref or anchor or data or data-about) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup or navref or anchor or data or data-about) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map, topicref, relcell, frontmatter, backmatter, draftintro, preface, chapter, part, appendix, notices, glossarylist, topichead, topicgroup
map	map, topicref, relcell, topichead, topicgroup

Inheritance:

+ map/topicref mapgroup-d/topicgroup

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

topichead

The <topichead> element provides a title-only entry in a navigation map, as an alternative to the fully-linked title provided by the <topicref> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
map	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup or navref or anchor or data or data-about) *(any number)*)
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup or navref or anchor or data or data-about) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	map, topicref, relcell, frontmatter, backmatter, draftintro, preface, chapter, part, appendix, notices, glossarylist, topichead, topicgroup
map	map, topicref, relcell, topichead, topicgroup

Inheritance:

+ map/topicref mapgroup-d/topichead

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 21. Bookmap content elements

The Bookmap specialization of ditamap supports standard book production for collections of DITA topics. The bookmap specialization includes many elements

The OASIS document type for the bookmap specialization also includes substantial book metadata for describing authors, based on the eXtensible Name and Address Language, or xNAL.

bookmap

The <bookmap> element is a map file used to organize DITA content into a traditional book format.

The <bookmap> element is used to define a map which describes the relationships among a set of DITA topics intended to be configured as a traditional book. Bookmaps consist of references to topics organized as book content. The topic references therefore are labeled according to the book components they point to, such as booktitle, frontmatter, chapter, appendix, etc.

The containing element for a bookmap is the <bookmap> element, which can take title, id, conref, and anchorref attributes. Within the bookmap, use the various book components and subcomponents to add and organize references to the topics comprising the book. You can use the bookmap element to set default attribute values for all topic references in the map.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((title) or (booktitle)) *(optional)* then (bookmeta) *(optional)* then (frontmatter) *(optional)* then (chapter) *(any number)* then (part) *(any number)* then (appendix) *(any number)* then (backmatter) *(optional)* then (reltable) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents

Inheritance:

- map/map bookmap/bookmap

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by href and conref attributes, and for external applications that refer to DITA content.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on a map that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

321

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
anchorref	Identifies a location within another map file where this map will be anchored (added at runtime, using Eclipse navigation integration). For example, `anchorref="map1.ditamap/a1"` causes this map to be pulled into the location of the anchor point a1 in the other map1.ditamap.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
xmlns:ditaarch	Declares the default DITA namespace.	CDATA	#FIXED http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/	
DITAArchVersion	Designates the version of the architecture that is in use.	CDATA	"1.1" (version dependent; will increase)	No
domains	Indicates the specialized domains that are included in the DTD or Schema.	CDATA	(map mapgroup-d) (topic indexing-d) (topic xnal-d)	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%select-atts; (props, base, platform, product, audience, otherprops, importance, rev, status)	A set of related attributes, described at "%select-atts;" on page 468	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

abbrevlist

The <abbrevlist> element references a list of abbreviations. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants an abbreviation list generated at the particular location.

Example

```
<abbrevlist href="abbrev.dita"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/abbrevlist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

amendments

The <amendments> element references a list of amendments or updates to the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants an amendments list generated at the particular location.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	backmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/amendments

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows: Target elsewhere in the same file: href="#topicid" First topic in different file: href="filename.dita" Specific topic in different file: href="filename.dita#topicid" If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

appendix

The <appendix> element references a topic as a appendix within a book.

Example

Appendix topics that include subtopics:

```
<appendix href="intro.dita">
 <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
 <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
</appendix>
<appendix href="setup.dita">
 <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
 <topicref href="download.dita"/>
</appendix>
```

Appendix that references a ditamap of content:

```
<appendix href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/appendix

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the \<topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the \<linktext> and \<shortdesc> in the \<topicref>'s \<topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

backmatter

The <backmatter> element contains the material that follows the main body of a document and any appendixes. It may include items such as a colophon, legal notices, and various types of book lists such as a glossary or an index.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(booklists or notices or dedication or colophon or amendments or topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/backmatter

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bibliolist

The <bibliolist> element references a list of bibliographic entries within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a bibliography, containing links to related books, articles, published papers, or other types of material, generated at the particular location.

Example

See "backmatter" on page 327.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/bibliolist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookabstract

The <bookabstract> element references a topic used within a bookmap as a brief summary of book content, generally output as part of the book's front matter. It is used to help the reader quickly evaluate the book's purpose

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/bookabstract

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

booklibrary

The <booklibrary> element contains the library information for a book. Library entries contain information about the series, library, or collection of documents to which the book belongs.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booktitle

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

booklist

The <booklist> element is a general purpose element, designed for use in specializations, that references a list of particular types of topics within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants that list of topics generated at the particular location. For example, it could be used in a specialization to reference the location of a list of program listings or of authors of topics.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/booklist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the \<topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the \<linktext> and \<shortdesc> in the \<topicref>'s \<topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

booklists

The \<booklists> element references lists of various kinds within the book. For example, it can be used within front matter to reference a \<toc>, \<tablelist>, and \<figurelist>, or within back matter to reference a \<glossarylist>, \<indexlist>, and \<abbrevlist>. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants the lists generated at the \<booklists> location.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((toc) or (figurelist) or (tablelist) or (abbrevlist) or (trademarklist) or (bibliolist) or (glossarylist) or (indexlist) or (booklist)) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter, backmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/booklists

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

booktitle

The <booktitle> element contains the title information for a book. , including <booklibrary> data, a <maintitle> and subtitle (<titlealt>) as required.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((booklibrary) *(optional)* then (mainbooktitle) then (booktitlealt) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap

Inheritance:

- topic/title bookmap/booktitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%id-atts; (id, conref)	A set of related attributes, described at "%id-atts;" on page 467	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%localization-atts; (translate, xml:lang, dir)	A set of related attributes, described at "%localization-atts;" on page 470.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

booktitlealt

The <booktitlealt> element contains the alternative title, subtitle, or short title for a book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booktitle

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

chapter

The <chapter> element references a topic as a chapter within a book.

Example

Chapter topics that include subtopics:

```
<chapter href="intro.dita">
 <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
 <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
</chapter>
<chapter href="setup.dita">
 <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
 <topicref href="download.dita"/>
</chapter>
```

Chapter that references a ditamap of content:

```
<chapter href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap, part

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/chapter

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

colophon

The <colophon> element references a topic describing how this document was created. In publishing, a colophon describes details of the production of a book. This information generally includes the typefaces used, and often the names of their designers; the paper, ink and details of the binding materials and methods may also receive mention. In the case of technical books, a colophon may specify the software used to prepare the text and diagrams for publication.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter, backmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/colophon

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

dedication

The <dedication> element references a topic containing a dedication for the book, such as to a person or group.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter, backmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/dedication

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

draftintro

The <draftintro> element references a topic used as an introduction to the draft of this book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/draftintro

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

figurelist

The <figurelist> element references a list of figures in the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a list of figures generated at the particular location.

Example

See "frontmatter" on page 342.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/figurelist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

frontmatter

The <frontmatter> element contains the material that precedes the main body of a document. It may include items such as an abstract, a preface, and various types of book lists such as a <toc>, <tablelist>, or <figurelist>.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(booklists or notices or dedication or colophon or bookabstract or draftintro or preface or topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/frontmatter

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
query	This attribute is deprecated. It may be removed in the future.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

glossarylist

The <glossarylist> element references a list of glossary entries within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a glossary list generated at the particular location.

Example

See "backmatter" on page 327.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/glossarylist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the `<topicref>` element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the `<linktext>` and `<shortdesc>` in the `<topicref>`'s `<topicmeta>` to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

indexlist

The <indexlist> element lists the index entries in the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants an index generated at the particular location.

Example

See "backmatter" on page 327.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/indexlist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the `<topicref>` element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the `<linktext>` and `<shortdesc>` in the `<topicref>`'s `<topicmeta>` to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

mainbooktitle

The <mainbooktitle> element contains the primary title information for a book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph or term or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booktitle

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

notices

The <notices> element references special notice information, for example, legal notices about supplementary copyrights and trademarks associated with the book. .

Example

References a notices topic for legal content.

```
<ibmbackmatter>
 <notices href="notices.dita"/>
 <backbooklists>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter, backmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/notices

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

part

The <part> element references a part topic for the book. A new part is started. Use <part> to divide a document's chapters into logical groupings. For example, in a document that contains both guide and reference information, you can define two parts, one containing the guide information and the other containing the reference information.

Example

Part topics that include chapters and subtopics:

```
<part href="guide.dita">
 <chapter href="intro.dita">
  <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
  <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
 </chapter>
 <chapter href="setup.dita">
  <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
  <topicref href="download.dita"/>
 </chapter>
</part>
<part href="ref.dita">
 <chapter href="commands.dita">
  <topicref href="care.dita"/>
  <topicref href="feed.dita"/>
 </chapter>
 <chapter href="apis.dita">
  <topicref href="acare.dita"/>
  <topicref href="afeed.dita"/>
 </chapter>
</part>
```

Parts that reference ditamaps of content:

```
<part href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
<part href="guide.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then ((topicref or topichead or topicgroup) or (chapter)) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/part

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the \<topicref\> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the \<linktext\> and \<shortdesc\> in the \<topicref\>'s \<topicmeta\> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

preface

The <preface> element references introductory information about a book, such as the purpose and structure of the document.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((topicmeta) *(optional)* then (topicref or topichead or topicgroup) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	frontmatter

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/preface

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the <topicref> element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the <linktext> and <shortdesc> in the <topicref>'s <topicmeta> to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tablelist

The <tablelist> element references a list of tables within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a list of tables generated at the particular location.

Example

See "frontmatter" on page 342.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/tablelist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the `<topicref>` element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the `<linktext>` and `<shortdesc>` in the `<topicref>`'s `<topicmeta>` to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

toc

The <toc> element references the table of contents within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a table of contents generated at the particular location.

Example

See "frontmatter" on page 342.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/toc

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the `<topicref>` element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the `<linktext>` and `<shortdesc>` in the `<topicref>`'s `<topicmeta>` to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

trademarklist

The <trademarklist> element references a list of trademarks within the book. It indicates to the processing software that the author wants a list of trademarks generated at the particular location.

Example

See "backmatter" on page 327.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	booklists

Inheritance:

- map/topicref bookmap/trademarklist

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
navtitle	Specifies the title of the topic as it will appear in navigation or tables of contents generated from the map.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	Points to a manual listing for the current element. If no href is specified, processors may choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element. All of the book listings operate in a similar manner; for example, `<toc href="toc.dita"/>` points to a topic which contains a manual table of contents, while `<toc/>` indicates that a processor should generate the table of contents. References to content other than DITA topics should use the format attribute to identify the kind of resource being referenced.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
copy-to	Use the copy-to attribute on the `<topicref>` element to provide a different file name for a particular instance of the topic in the map (for example, to separate out the different versions of the topic, rather than combining them on output). The links and navigation associated with that instance will point to a copy of the topic with the file name you specified. Use the `<linktext>` and `<shortdesc>` in the `<topicref>`'s `<topicmeta>` to provide a unique name and short description for the new copy.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
%topicref-atts; (collection-type, type, scope, locktitle, format, linking, toc, print, search, chunk)	A set of related attributes. See "%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;" on page 474.	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 22. Bookmap metadata elements

The Bookmap specialization of ditamap supports standard book production for collections of DITA topics. This section contains the metadata elements used by bookmap to store book related metadata.

Note: The OASIS document type for the bookmap specialization includes the xNAL domain specialization for describing the author or authors of a document. All elements that appear in that domain (the authorinformation element and all of its descendants) are described in the xNAL domain section, rather than in this bookmap metadata section.

bookmeta

The <bookmeta> element contains information about the book that is not considered book content, such as copyright information, author information, and any classifications.

Example

In this example:

- The <authorinformation> contains the content for a reader's comment form; the <maintainer> element references that author information to create the reader comment form.
- The <prodinfo> element contains the book's product information. This includes the product name, and the version, release, and modification information.
- The <bookid> element contains the book's form number and part number information. The <maintainer> element contains the reader comment information; point to the <authorinformation> element for a complete RCF.
- The <bookrights> element contains the book's copyright information.

```
<bookmeta>
 <authorinformation id="rcf">
  <organizationinfo><namedetails><organizationnamedetails>
  <organizationname>IBM</organizationname>
  </organizationnamedetails></namedetails>
  <addressdetails>ATTN: Dept 542<thoroughfare>3905 37th Street NW</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Rochester, MN<postalcode>55901-6666</postalcode></locality>
  <country>USA</country></addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber type="telephone">800-555-1212</contactnumber>
  <contactnumber type="fax">800-555-1213</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses><emailaddress>phred@us.ibm.com</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
  <urls><url>http://w3-03.ibm.com/ids/page/636</url></urls>
  </organizationinfo>
 </authorinformation>
 <prodinfo>
  <prodname>My Product</prodname>
  <vrmlist><vrm release="Release 1" version="Version 3"/></vrmlist>
 </prodinfo>
 <bookid><bookpartno>99F9999</bookpartno><booknumber>SC00-0000-00</booknumber>
 <maintainer href="#rcf"></maintainer></bookid>
 <bookrights><copyrfirst><year>1996</year></copyrfirst><copyrlast><year>2006</year>
 </copyrlast><bookowner><organization>IBM</organization></bookowner></bookrights>
</bookmeta>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((linktext) *(optional)* then (searchtitle) *(optional)* then (shortdesc) *(optional)* then (author or authorinformation) *(any number)* then (source) *(optional)* then (publisherinformation) *(any number)* then (critdates) *(optional)* then (permissions) *(optional)* then (audience) *(any number)* then (category) *(any number)* then (keywords) *(any number)* then (prodinfo) *(any number)* then (othermeta) *(any number)* then (resourceid) *(any number)* then (bookid) *(optional)* then (bookchangehistory) *(any number)* then (bookrights) *(any number)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmap

Inheritance:

- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
lockmeta	Indicates whether any of the meta information should be replaced by meta information in the referenced topic.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class	A common attribute described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

approved

The <approved> element contains information about when and by whom the book was approved during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (revisionid) *(optional)* then (started) *(optional)* then (completed) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/approved

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookchangehistory

The <bookchangehistory> element contains information about the history of the book's creation and publishing lifecycle, who wrote, reviewed, edited, and tested the book, and when these events took place.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((reviewed) *(any number)* then (edited) *(any number)* then (tested) *(any number)* then (approved) *(any number)* then (bookevent) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookchangehistory

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookevent

The <bookevent> element indicates a general event in the publication history of a book. This is an appropriate element for specialization if the current set of specific book event types, that is, review, edit, test or approval, does not meed your needs.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((bookeventtype) *(optional)* then ((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (revisionid) *(optional)* then (started) *(optional)* then (completed) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookevent

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookeventtype

The <bookeventtype> element indicates the specific nature of a <bookevent>, such as updated, indexed, or deprecated. The required name attribute indicates the event's type.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookevent

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookeventtype

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows: Target elsewhere in the same file: href="#topicid" First topic in different file: href="filename.dita" Specific topic in different file: href="filename.dita#topicid" If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
name	The name of the event represented by this element.	CDATA	#REQUIRED	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookid

The <bookid> element contains the publisher's identification information for the book, such as part number, edition number and ISBN number.

Example

See "bookmeta" on page 357.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((bookpartno) *(any number)* then (edition) *(optional)* then (isbn) *(optional)* then (booknumber) *(optional)* then (volume) *(any number)* then (maintainer) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookid

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

booknumber

The <booknumber> element contains the book's form number, such as SC21-1920.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/booknumber

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookowner

The <bookowner> element contains the owner of the copyright.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((person) or (organization)) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookrights

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookowner

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookpartno

The <bookpartno> element contains the book's part number; such as 99F1234. This is generally the number that the publisher uses to identify the book for tracking purposes.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookpartno

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookrestriction

The <bookrestriction> element indicates whether the book is classified, or restricted in some way. The value attribute indicates the restrictions; this may be a string like "All Rights Reserved," representing the publisher's copyright restrictions.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookrights

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookrestriction

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
value	Describes restrictions on this version of the publication. Values are confidential, restricted, licensed, unclassified, and -dita-use-conref-target.	(confidential | restricted | licensed | unclassified | -dita-use-conref-target)	(beta | limited | general | -dita-use-conref-target)	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

bookrights

The <bookrights> element contains the information about the legal rights associated with the book, including copyright dates and owners.

Example

See "bookmeta" on page 357.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((copyrfirst) *(optional)* then (copyrlast) *(optional)* then (bookowner) then (bookrestriction) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/bookrights

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

completed

The <completed> element indicates a completion date for some type of book event, such as a review, editing, or testing.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((year) then ((month) then (day) *(optional)*) *(optional)*) or ((month) then (day) *(optional)* then (year)) or ((day) then (month) then (year)))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/completed

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

copyrfirst

The <copyrfirst> element contains the first copyright year within a multiyear copyright statement.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(year)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookrights

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/copyrfirst

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

copyrlast

The <copylast> element contains the last copyright year within a multiyear copyright statement.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(year)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookrights

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/copyrlast

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

day

The <day> element denotes a day of the month.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	started, started, started, completed, completed, completed

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/day

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

edited

The <edited> element contains information about when and by whom the book was edited during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (revisionid) *(optional)* then (started) *(optional)* then (completed) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/edited

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

edition

The <edition> element contains the edition number information, such as First Edition, or Third Edition, used by a publisher to identify a book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/edition

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

isbn

The <isbn> element contains the book's International Standard Book Number (ISBN).

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/isbn

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

maintainer

The <maintainer> element contains information about who maiintains the document; this can be an organization or a person.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/maintainer

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

month

The <month> element denotes a month of the year.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	started, started, started, completed, completed, completed

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/month

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

organization

The <organization> element contains the name of an organization. Note that unlike <organizationname>, the <organization> element is not restricted to usage within <authorinformation>; it does not have to contain the name of an authoring organization.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation, published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent, maintainer, bookowner

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/organization

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	  `href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	  `href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	  `href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

person

The <person> element contains information about the name of a person. Note that unlike the <personname> element, the <person> element is not restricted to describing the names of authors.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation, published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent, maintainer, bookowner

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/person

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

printlocation

The <printlocation> element indicates the location where the book was printed. Customarily, the content is restricted to the name of the country.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/printlocation

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

published

The <published> element contains information about the person or organization publishing the book, the dates when it was started and completed, and any special restrictions associated with it.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (publishtype) *(optional)* then (revisionid) *(optional)* then (started) *(optional)* then (completed) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	publisherinformation

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/published

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

publisherinformation

The <publisherinformation> contains information about what group or person published the book, where it was published, and certain details about its publication history. Other publication history information is found in the <bookchangehistory> element.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (printlocation) *(any number)* then (published) *(any number)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookmeta

Inheritance:

- topic/publisher bookmap/publisherinformation

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

publishtype

The <publishtype> element indicates whether the book is generally available or is restricted in some way. The value attribute indicates the restrictions.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	no content

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/publishtype

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
value	Describes the status of this publication. Values are beta, limited, general, and -dita-use-conref-target.	CDATA	(beta | limited | general | -dita-use-conref-target)	Yes
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

reviewed

The <reviewed> element contains information about when and by whom the book was reviewed during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (revisionid) *(optional)* then (started) *(optional)* then (completed) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/reviewed

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

revisionid

The <revisionid> element indicates the revision number or revision ID of the book. The processing implementation determines how the level is displayed. Common methods include using a dash, for example "-01". or a period, such as ".01".

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/revisionid

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

started

The <started> element indicates a start date for some type of book event, such as a review, editing, or testing.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((year) then ((month) then (day) *(optional)*) *(optional)*) or ((month) then (day) *(optional)* then (year)) or ((day) then (month) then (year)))

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/started

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

summary

The <summary> element contains a text summary associated with a book event (such as <approved> or <reviewed>) or with the list of copyrights for the book.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	published, reviewed, edited, tested, approved, bookevent, bookrights

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/summary

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

tested

The <tested> element contains information about when and by whom the book was tested during its publication history.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(((person) or (organization)) *(any number)* then (revisionid) *(optional)* then (started) *(optional)* then (completed) *(optional)* then (summary) *(optional)* then (data) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookchangehistory

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/tested

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

volume

The <volume> element contains the book's volume number, such as Volume 2.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	bookid

Inheritance:

- topic/data bookmap/volume

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

year

The <year> element denotes a year.

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	started, started, started, completed, completed, completed, copyrfirst, copyrlast

Inheritance:

- topic/ph bookmap/year

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 23. xNAL domain elements

The xNAL domain elements represent a subset of the Extensible Name and Address Standard. The domain can be included in any topic type or map, although the implementations provided by OASIS only include it in the bookmap specialization. It is used to encode information about the author or authors of DITA information.

xNAL usage guidelines

Extended information and usage examples for DITA bookmap metadata elements associated with OASIS xNAL Standard (extensible Name and Address Language).

DITA bookmaps use a set of elements associated with a subset of the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) specification (Version 2) to denote name and address information related to persons and organizations.

While the elements share element names, and the expectation is that content written using this type of metadata should be straightforward to transform, the element name pairs do not share content models. The difference in content models reflects the different purposes of the two standards. The purpose of the name and address elements in DITA is to identify persons or organizations associated with the creation of a document; the purpose of the name and address elements in xNAL is to support customer resource management.

The examples shown after the table provide sample tagging methods for name and address information, using the DITA elements associated with xNAL.

DITA elements associated with xNAL elements

The set of bookmap elements associated with elements from the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) standard are listed in the table below.

Table 1. DITA elements associated with xNAL elements

addressdetails	honorific	otherinfo
administrativearea	lastname	person
authorinformation	locality	personinfo
contactnumber	localityname	personname
contactnumbers	middlename	postalcode
country	namedetails	thoroughfare
emailaddress	organization	url
emailaddresses	organizationinfo	urls
firstname	organizationname	
generationidentifier	organizationnamedetails	

Example 1: Tagging personal information in DITA

This example shows a way to tag the following personal name and description.

Mr. Ram V. Kumar Jr.
Chief Technologist
MSI Business Solutions

```
<authorinformation>
  <personinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <personname>
        <honorific>Mr.</honorific>
        <firstname>Ram</firstname>
        <middlename>V.</middlename>
        <lastname>Kumar</lastname>
        <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
        <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
      </personname>
    </namedetails>
  </personinfo>
  <organizationinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <organizationnamedetails>
        <organizationname>MSI Business Solutions</organizationname>
      </organizationnamedetails>
    </namedetails>
  </organizationinfo>
</authorinformation>
```

Example 2: Tagging address information in DITA

This example shows a way to tag the following address.

23 Archer St.
Chatsworth
NSW 2067
Australia

```
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Archer St.</thoroughfare>
  <locality>
    <localityname>Chatsworth</localityname>
    <postalcode>2067</ppostalcode>
  </locality>
  <administrativearea>NSW</administrativearea>
  <country>Australia</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Example 3: Tagging complex name and address information in DITA

This example shows two ways to tag a fairly complex collection of personal, organizational, and address information.

Mr. Samuel L. Johnson Jr.
Chief Technologist
c/o XYZ Corporation
52 New Main St.
Carrboro, NC 27510 USA
email: johnson@example.com
phone: 919-555-7987

This method tags all the organizational information as associated with the identified person.

```
<personinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <personname>
        <firstname>Samuel</firstname>
        <middlename>L.</middlename>
        <lastname>Johnson</lastname>
        <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
        <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
```

```
        <otherinfo>c/o XYZ Corporation </otherinfo>
      </personname>
    </namedetails>
    <addressdetails>
      <thoroughfare>52 New Main St.</thoroughfare>
      <locality>
         <localityname>Carrboro</localityname>
         <postalcode>27510</postalcode>
      </locality>
      <administrativearea>NC</administrativearea>
      <country>USA</country>
    </addressdetails>
    <contactnumbers>
      <contactnumber>919-555-7987</contactnumber>
    </contactnumbers>
    <emailaddresses>
      <emailaddress>johnson@example.com</emailaddress>
    </emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

The following method separates the person and organization information. It might be used if it were necessary to associate address information with organizations rather than persons.

```
<authorinformation>
  <personinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <personname>
         <firstname>Samuel</firstname>
         <middlename>L.</middlename>
         <lastname>Johnson</lastname>
         <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
         <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
      </personname>
    </namedetails>
    <contactnumbers>
      <contactnumber>919-555-7987</contactnumber>
    </contactnumbers>
    <emailaddresses>
      <emailaddress>johnson@example.com</emailaddress>
    </emailaddresses>
  </personinfo>
  <organizationinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <organizationnamedetails>
         <organizationname>XYZ Corporation</organizationname>
         <otherinfo>c/o </otherinfo>
      </organizationnamedetails>
    </namedetails>
    <addressdetails>
      <thoroughfare>52 New Main St.</thoroughfare>
      <locality>
         <localityname>Carrboro</localityname>
         <postalcode>27510</postalcode>
      </locality>
      <administrativearea>NC</administrativearea>
      <country>USA</country>
    </addressdetails>
  </organizationinfo>
</authorinformation>
```

authorinformation

The <authorinformation> element contains detailed information about the author or authoring organization.

```
<authorinformation>
 <personinfo>
  <namedetails><personname>
    <firstname>Derek</firstname>
    <middlename>L.</middlename>
    <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
    <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname></namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 </personinfo>
</authorinformation>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((personinfo or organizationinfo) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	topicmeta, bookmeta

Inheritance:

+ topic/author xnal-d/authorinformation

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

addressdetails

The <addressdetails> element contains information about the address of the author or authoring group.

```
 <personinfo>
  <namedetails><personname>
    <firstname>Derek</firstname>
    <middlename>L.</middlename>
    <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
    <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname></namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 </personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or locality or administrativearea or thoroughfare or country) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo, organizationinfo

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/addressdetails

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

administrativearea

The <administrativearea> element contains information about a county, state, or province.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>Emerald City</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/administrativearea

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

contactnumber

A <contactnumber> element contains a telephone number.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	contactnumbers

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/contactnumber

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file: href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file: href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file: href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

contactnumbers

The <contactnumbers> element contains a list of telephone and fax numbers.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(contactnumber) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo, organizationinfo

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/contactnumbers

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Chapter 23. xNAL domain elements **421**

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

country

The <country> element contains the name of a country.

```
<addressdetails>
 <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
 <locality>Emerald City</locality>
 <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
 <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/country

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

emailaddress

The <emailaddress> element contains an e-mail address.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
```

```
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
<addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses>
  <emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress>
</emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	emailaddresses

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/emailaddress

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

emailaddresses

The <emailaddress> element contains a list of e-mail addresses.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(emailaddress) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo, organizationinfo

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/emailaddresses

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	  `href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	  `href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	  `href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

firstname

The <firstname> element contains the person's first name.

```
<namedetails>
 <personname>
  <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname>
</namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/firstname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

generationidentifier

The <generationidentifier> element contains information about the person's generation, such as: Jr, III, or VIII.

```
<namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/generationidentifier

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

honorific

The <honorific> element contains the person's title, such as: Dr., Mr., Ms., HRH.. or Grand Exalted Wizard.

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorofic>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/honorific

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	  `href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	  `href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	  `href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

lastname

The <lastname> element contains the person's last name.

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/lastname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

locality

The <locality> element contains information about the city and postal or ZIP code. It can contain the information directly, or by acting as a wrapper for <localityname> and <postalcode>.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown or localityname or postalcode) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/locality

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

localityname

The <localityname> element contains the name of the locality or city.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	locality

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/localityname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

middlename

The <middlename> element contains the person's middle name or initial.

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personname

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/middlename

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

namedetails

The <namedetails> element contains information about the name of the author or the authoring organization.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((personname or organizationnamedetails) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	personinfo, organizationinfo

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/namedetails

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

organizationinfo

The <organizationinfo> element contains detailed information about an authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
```

```
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
<urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((namedetails) *(optional)* then (addressdetails) *(optional)* then (contactnumbers) *(optional)* then (emailaddresses) *(optional)* then (urls) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	authorinformation

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/organizationinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

organizationname

The <organizationname> element contains name information about the authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  </organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
```

```
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or ph or term or xref or cite or q or boolean or state or keyword or tm or image or draft-comment or required-cleanup or fn or indextermref or indexterm or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	organizationnamedetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/organizationname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

organizationnamedetails

The <organizationnamedetails> element contains information about the name of an authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
```

```
<contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
<emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
<urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((organizationname) *(optional)* then (otherinfo) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	namedetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/organizationnamedetails

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

otherinfo

The <otherinfo> element contains other name information about the author or authoring organization.

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	organizationnamedetails, personname

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/otherinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

personinfo

The <personinfo> element is a wrapper containing all relevant data about a person, including name, address, and contact information.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((namedetails) *(optional)* then (addressdetails) *(optional)* then (contactnumbers) *(optional)* then (emailaddresses) *(optional)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	authorinformation

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/personinfo

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is local. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

personname

The <personname> element contains name information about the author.

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
```

```
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	((honorific) *(optional)* then (firstname) *(any number)* then (middlename) *(any number)* then (lastname) *(any number)* then (generationidentifier) *(optional)* then (otherinfo) *(any number)*)

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	namedetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/personname

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to local when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to peer when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to external when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is local. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

postalcode

The <postalcode> element contains information about the postal code or the ZIP code.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	locality

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/postalcode

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

thoroughfare

The <thoroughfare> element contains information about the thoroughfare - for example, the street, avenue, or boulevard - on which an address is located.

```
<addressdetails>
<thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
<locality>
<localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
<postalcode>66780</postalcode>
</locality>
<administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
<country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	addressdetails

Inheritance:

+ topic/ph xnal-d/thoroughfare

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass, keyref	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

url

The <url> element contains a Uniform Resource Locator (URL).

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(text data or keyword or term or data or data-about or foreign or unknown) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	urls

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/url

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

urls

The <urls> element contains a list of Uniform Resource Locators (URLs).

```
<organizationinfo>
 <namedetails>
  <organizationnamedetails>
   <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
   <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
  <organizationnamedetails>
 </namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
 <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

Contains

Doctype	Content model
bookmap	(url) *(any number)*

Contained by

Doctype	Parents
bookmap	organizationinfo

Inheritance:

+ topic/data xnal-d/urls

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
name	Defines a unique name for the object.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
datatype	Describes the type of data contained in the value attribute or within the data element. A typical use of datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
value	Specifies the value of a run-time parameter specified by the name attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

href	A hyperlink to an external Web page (URL) or other non-DITA resource, or to another DITA topic in the same file or in another file. The format attribute identifies the format of the target. Non-DITA targets use standard URL syntax. DITA topics are targetted as follows:
	
	`Target elsewhere in the same file:`
	`  href="#topicid"`
	`First topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita"`
	`Specific topic in different file:`
	`  href="filename.dita#topicid"`
	
	If the URL contains an ampersand character, the ampersand symbol (&) should be used to indicate that character
		CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
%univ-atts; (%select-atts;, %id-atts;, %localization-atts;)	A set of related attributes, described at "%univ-atts;" on page 471	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
%global-atts; (xtrf, xtrc)	A set of related attributes, described at "%global-atts;" on page 466	parameter entity	*PE not applicable*	Not applicable
class, outputclass	Common attributes described in "Other common DITA attributes" on page 477			

Chapter 24. DITAVAL elements

You can create a conditional processing profile to identify which values you want to conditionally process for a particular output, build, or other purpose. The profile has the extension .ditaval to identify it to conditional processing systems.

The .ditaval format has several elements: val, the root element, can contain a style-conflict element followed by prop or revprop elements; the prop and revprop elements can contain startflag and endflag elements; and the startflag and endflag elements can contain alt-text elements.

Notes on ditaval messages

It is recommended but not required that conditional processing code provide a report of any attribute values encountered in content that do not have an explicit action associated with them.

Note on ditaval flagging of images

If an image in DITA content becomes flagged using a background color, the color should be represented as a thick border. If a foreground color is expressed, it should be represented as a thin border.

val

<val> is the root element of a ditaval file.

Contains

style-conflict (*optional*) then (prop *or* revprop) (*any number*)

style-conflict

The style-conflict element declares behavior to be used when one or more flagging methods collide on a single content element.

In case of conflicts between flagging methods at different levels (for example, a section is flagged green and a paragraph within the section is flagged red) the most deeply nested flagging method applies.

In case of conflicts between flagging methods on the same element (for example, a single element is being flagged with both green and red color) it is recommended that the conflicts be resolved as follows:

Flagging method
    Conflict behavior

startflag/endflag
    Add all flags that apply.

color   Follow the style-conflict @foreground-conflict-color setting, or use an output-appropriate default color if no conflict color is set.

backcolor
    Follow the style-conflict @background-conflict-color setting, or use an output-appropriate default color if no conflict color is set

style   Add all font styles that apply. If two different kinds of underline are used, default to the heaviest (double underline) and use the foreground-conflict-color.

459

changebar
  Add all change bars that apply.

Contains

(empty)

Contained by

val

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
foreground-conflict-color	The color to be used when more than one flagging color applies to a single content element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
background-conflict-color	The color to be used when more than one flagging background color applies to a single content element.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no

prop

Identifies an attribute, and usually values in the attribute, to take an action on. The attribute must be a conditional processing attribute: platform, product, audience, props. and otheprops; or a specialization of the props attribute. There can be at most one occurrence of a ″prop″ element with no attribute specified (setting a default action for every prop element), at most one for each attribute with no value specified (setting the default action for a specific attribute), and at most one with each attribute value specification (to avoid conflicting actions for the same attribute value).

Contains

startflag (*optional*) then endflag (*optional*)

Contained by

val

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
att	The attribute to be acted upon. Must be one of props, audience, platform, product, otherprops, or a specialization of props. If the att attribute is absent, then the prop element declares a default behavior for any conditional processing attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
val	The value to be acted upon. If the val attribute is absent, then the prop element declares a default behavior for any value in the specified attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no

31 May 2007

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
action	The action to be taken. The options are: **include** Include the content in output. This is the default behavior unless otherwise set. **exclude** Exclude the content from output (if all values in the particular attribute are excluded). **passthrough** Include the content in output, and preserve the attribute value as part of the output stream for further processing by a runtime engine, for example runtime filtering based on individual user settings. The value should be preserved in whatever syntax is required by the target runtime. Values that are not explicitly passed through should be removed from the output stream, even though the content is still included. **flag** Include and flag the content on output (if the content has not been excluded).	(include | exclude | passthrough | flag)	#IMPLIED	yes
color	If flag has been set, the color to use to flag text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/slice5.html#section-N8794-Property-Datatypes and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
backcolor	If flag has been set, the color to use as background for flagged text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/slice5.html#section-N8794-Property-Datatypes and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
style	If flag has been set, the text style to use for flagged text. The following values are enumerated: • underline • double-underline • italics • overline • bold If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	(underline | double-underline | italics | overline | bold)	#IMPLIED	no

revprop

Identifies a value in the rev attribute that should be flagged in some manner. Unlike the other conditional processing attributes, which can be used for both filtering and flagging, the rev attribute can only be used for flagging. There can be at most one occurrence of a "revprop" element for each attribute value specification (to avoid conflicting actions for the same attribute value).

The default alternate text for revprop start of change is a localized translation of "Start of change". The default alternate text for revprop end of change is a localized translation of "End of change".

Contains

startflag (*optional*) then endflag (*optional*)

Contained by

val

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
val	The value to be acted upon. If the val attribute is absent, then the revprop element declares a default behavior for any value in the rev attribute.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
action	The action to be taken. The options are: **include** Include the content in output without flags. This is the default behavior unless otherwise set. **passthrough** Include the content in output, and preserve the attribute value as part of the output stream for further processing by a runtime engine, for example runtime filtering based on individual user settings. The value should be preserved in whatever syntax is required by the target runtime. Values that are not explicitly passed through should be removed from the output stream, even though the content is still included. **flag** Include and flag the content on output (if the content has not been excluded).	(include | passthrough | flag)	#IMPLIED	yes
changebar	When flag has been set, specify a changebar color, style, or character, according to the changebar support of the target output format. If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
color	If flag has been set, the color to use to flag text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/slice5.html#section-N8794-Property-Datatypes and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
backcolor	If flag has been set, the color to use as background for flagged text. Colors may be entered by name or code. Processor support is recommended for the color names listed in http://www.w3.org/TR/2001/REC-xsl-20011015/slice5.html#section-N8794-Property-Datatypes and for the 6 digit hex code form (#rrggbb, case insensitive). If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	no
style	If flag has been set, the text style to use for flagged text. The following values are enumerated: • underline • double-underline • italics • overline • bold If flag has not been set this attribute is ignored.	(underline | double-underline | italics | overline | bold)	#IMPLIED	no

startflag

The startflag takes an optional image reference and an optional alt-text element for identifying the beginning of flagged content. If an image is specified, the specified image will be used to flag the beginning of the content, with the alt-text contents as alternative text. If alt-text is specified without an image, that text will be used to flag the content instead of an image. If no image and no alt-text are specified, then this element has no defined purpose. The startflag element is allowed inside either prop or revprop.

Contains

alt-text (*optional*)

Contained by

prop, revprop

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
imageref	The relative path or URL to the image file. The attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: href="../images/construction.gif"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	yes

endflag

The endflag takes an optional image reference and an optional alt-text element for identifying the end of flagged content. If an image is specified, the specified image will be used to flag the end of the content, with the alt-text contents as alternative text. If alt-text is specified without an image, that text will be used to flag the content instead of an image. If no image and no alt-text are specified, then this element has no defined purpose. The endflag element is allowed inside either prop or revprop.

Contains

alt-text (*optional*)

Contained by

prop, revprop

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
imageref	The relative path or URL to the image file. The attribute uses conventional URL syntax to point to the resource: href="../images/construction.gif"	CDATA	#IMPLIED	yes

alt-text

An element allowed inside either startflag or endflag to provide alternate text for an image, when the imageref attribute sets an image to be used for flagging. The default alternate text for revprop start of change is a localized translation of "Start of change". The default alternate text for revprop end of change is a localized translation of "End of change".

Contains

text data

Contained by

startflag, endflag

Chapter 25. Commonly referenced attributes

Several parts of a language reference are common between many locations, such as the descriptions for the selection and property attributes of DITA elements. These are described as sets to reduce unnecessary duplication of common information.

%display-atts;

Display attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes whose values may be used for affecting the display of a topic or its selection by search tools.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
scale	Specifies a percentage, selected from an enumerated list, that is used to resize fonts in relation to the normal text size. This attribute is primarily useful for print-oriented display. The scale attribute provides an acknowledged style-based property directly on DITA elements. For the table and fig elements, the intent of the property is to allow authors to adjust font sizes on the content of the containing element, primarily for print accomodation. An image in these contexts is to be scaled only by its own direct scale property. If not specifically scaled, such an image is unchanged by the scale property of its parent table or fig.	(50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 200 | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
frame	Specifies which portion of a border should surround the element. Allowable values are: **top** Draw a line before the element **bottom** Draw a line after the element **topbot** Draw a line both before and after the element **all** Draw a box around the element **sides** Draw a line at each side of the element **none** Don't draw any lines around this element **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information. Some DITA processors or output formats may not be able to support all values.	(top | bottom | topbot | all | sides | none | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
expanse	Determines the horizontal placement of the element. Allowable values are: "page" places the element on the left page margin; "column" aligns the element with the current column margin; "textline" aligns the element with the left margin of the current text line and takes indention into account. See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on the conref value. For non-paginated output, such as XHTML, some values may not be supported. In DITA tables, in place of the expanse attribute used by other DITA elements, the pgwide attribute is used in order to conform with the OASIS Exchange Table Model. This attribute has a similar semantic (1=page width; 0=resize to galley or column).	(page | column | textline | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Example

The %display-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA dtds as a common definition for attributes that affect presentation of certain elements. Not all of these capabilities have been provided yet for DITA topic processing. A typical example might be:

```
<codeblock scale="90" frame="topbot" expanse="page">
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
  Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>
```

%global-atts;

Debugging attributes, normally hidden from authoring view.

These attributes are intended to store debugging information during intermediate processing. One possible implementation is to use xtrf (xml-trace-filename) to store the original source filename through intermediate processing steps, and use xtrc (xml-trace-counter) to store an element counter for repositioning authoring tools at the originating element location. If values are assigned in this way in the first stage of a processing stream, values in these attributes can then be used for error recovery.

These attributes are normally hidden from authors and exposed only to processing tools or editor macros. Values used in these attributes may be implementation-dependent.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xtrf	xml-trace-filename, the original filename	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
xtrc	xml-trace-counter, an element counter for repositioning editors at a known edit location	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

%id-atts;

ID attributes (%id-atts;) is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes that enable the naming and referencing of elements in a DITA topic: *id* and *conref*.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by href and conref attributes, and for external applications that refer to DITA content.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Example

The %id-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA dtds as a common definition for attributes available to most elements that enable you to name or reference (link to or fetch) the content of particular elements. Some typical examples include:

```
<p id="mainpara">The war cry of Kudzu University, <q id="warcry">To the victor
go the spoils!</q>, is often heard on campus during freshman orientation.</p>
<p id="dullpara">One often hears the cry, <q conref="#topicid/warcry"/>, when
students are competing in intramural sports.</p>
```

%rel-atts;

Relational attributes (<%rel-atts;>) is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD that includes attributes whose values may be used for representing navigational relationships. These attributes occur only on elements that represent relationships between topics.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
role	The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time. See "The role attribute" on page 482 for information on supported values.	(parent | child | sibling | friend | next | previous | cousin | ancestor | descendant | *sample* | *external* | *[deprecated]* other | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
otherrole	Indicates an alternate role. This value is used when the role attribute is set to other.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

The %rel-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA DTDs as a common definition for attributes available to elements that represent topic-to-topic relationships. Some typical examples include:

```
<link type="task" role="child" href="how2uninst.dita" scope="local"/>
```

%select-atts;

Attributes that support both filtering and flagging include *props* , *platform* , *product* , *audience* , and *otherprops* . Attribute *base* is a generic attribute that is available for specialization; it can be specialized for values that have a simple value syntax like the filter attributes, but is not itself a filtering or flagging attribute. Attribute *rev* only lets you flag information that matches a run-time parameter. Attribute *importance* provides a range of values for applications to use as needed. The %select-atts; entity also includes additional entities that allow it to include specializations of the props and base attribute. See the DITA Architectural Specification for more information on filtering or flagging with attributes, as well as for information on specialization the base and props attributes.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
importance	A range of values that describe an importance or priority attributed to an element. For example, in steps of a task, the attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required.	obsolete | deprecated | optional | default | low | normal | high | recommended | required | urgent | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Example

The %select-atts; parameter entity is used within the DITA DTDs as a common definition for attributes available to most elements for you to enable the content for improved retrievability or for selection. Some typical examples include:

```
The <keyword platform="Linux">chmod</keyword> command...
<ph product="WhiteknuckleHandsoap">Amalgamated Cleansers get the grime!</ph>
<msgph audience="programmer administrator">Divide by -1 error.</msgph>
<ph otherprops="java">When using Java, use the
  <apiname>com.ibm.obscureclass</apiname> to calculate the value.</ph>
<p importance="recommended" rev="3.2">Update anti-virus software often.</p>
```

Note that, aside from those with pre-defined values, these attributes allow multiple values. For example, the audience attribute in the example indicates that the message is of interest to both programmers and administrators.

%localization-atts;

Localization attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD, which defines a set of common attributes available on most DITA elements.

The localization-atts entity includes:

* *translate*
* *xml:lang*
* *dir*

Detailed information on localization with DITA, including several best practices on the use of these attributes, is available in the DITA Architectural Specification.

Attributes

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

The translate, xml:lang, and dir attributes identify language-specific words or phrases for specific processing (or non-processing, in the case of translate="no").

```
<p>The cordial response to the question is
<q translate="no" xml:lang="de-de" dir="ltr">nein.</q></p>
```

%univ-atts;

Universal attributes is a parameter entity declaration in the topic DTD, which defines a set of common attributes available on most DITA elements.

The univ-atts entity includes:

- the attributes in the select-atts parameter entity
- the attributes in the id-atts parameter entity
- the attributes in the localization-atts parameter entity

Attributes

This section describes the attributes from select-atts, followed by those from id-atts, followed by those from localization-atts.

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
props	Root attribute from which new metadata attributes can be specialized. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
base	A generic attribute that has no specific purpose, but is intended to act as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple value syntax like the conditional processing attributes (one or more alphanumeric values separated by whitespace). The attribute takes a space delimited set of values. However, when acting as a container for generalized attributes, the content model will be more complex; that model is documented in the "attribute generalization" section of the DITA architectural specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
platform	Indicates operating system and hardware. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
product	Contains the name of the product to which the topic applies. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
audience	Indicates the intended audience for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
otherprops	This attribute can be used for any other properties that might be needed to describe an audience, or to provide selection criteria for the element. This is a property attribute which supports conditional processing for filtering or flagging. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor. The attribute takes a space delimited set of values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
importance	A range of values that describe an importance or priority attributed to an element. For example, in steps of a task, the attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required.	obsolete | deprecated | optional | default | low | normal | high | recommended | required | urgent | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
rev	Indicates revision level of an element. It is useful for flagging outputs based on revision. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
status	The status of the current element.	new | changed | deleted | unchanged | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
id	An anchor point. This ID is the target for references by href and conref attributes, and for external applications that refer to DITA content.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
conref	This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. See "The conref attribute" on page 478 for examples and details about the syntax.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
translate	Indicates whether the content of the element should be translated or not. The DITA architectural specification contains a list of each OASIS DITA element and its common processing default for the translate value.	yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target	#IMPLIED	No
xml:lang	Specifies the language of the element content. When no xml:lang value is supplied, the default value of English is assumed. For example, if there is a note element with the attribute xml:lang set to the value "es," then the label on the note, which normally appears as "Note" will now appear in Spanish as "Nota." The allowed xml:lang values are based on RFC 4646 Tags for Identifying Languages (see W3C: Language tags in HTML and XML).	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
dir	Specifies the directionality of text: left-to-right (ltr, the processing default) or right-to-left (rtl). See the DITA Architectural Specification for best practices related to this attribute, and other aspects of DITA and translation.	(ltr | rtl | lro | rlo | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

See examples for the select-atts and id-atts parameter entries.

%topicref-atts; and %topicref-atts-no-toc;

The %topicref-atts; parameter entity represents a group of attributes used in numerous map elements, such as map, topicref, relcolspec, relcell, topichead, and topicgroup. The set is identical to those in the topicref-atts-no-toc attribute set, except that %topicref-atts; does not provide a default for the toc attribute.

Attributes

The table below represents the topicref-atts attribute set. For elements that use topicref-atts-no-toc, such as <reltable>, the toc attribute has a default of "no".

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
collection-type	Collection types describe how links relate to each other. A family collection represents a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other. Sequence indicates that the order of the child topics is significant; output processors will typically link between them in order. Unordered indicates that the order is not significant. Choice indicates that one of the children should be selected. If no value is specified, processors should treat the default as "unordered", although no default is specified in the DTD. See this topic for more information on the conref value. Usage of the collection-type attribute on \<reltable> and \<relcolspec> is currently undefined, and reserved for future use.	(unordered | sequence | choice | family | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
type	Describes the target of a cross-reference. See "The type attribute" on page 480 for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.	CDATA	#IMPLIED (Processed as if the target were of type "topic", or inherited from an ancestor)	No
scope	The scope attribute identifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the target resource. • Set scope to `local` when the resource is part of the current set of content. • Set scope to `peer` when the resource is part of the current set of content but is not accessible at build time. • Set scope to `external` when the resource is not part of the current information set and should open in a new browser window. • See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information on -dita-use-conref-target. The processing default is `local`. If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.	(local | peer | external | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
locktitle	This attribute makes sure the *navtitle* attribute is used if it is present; if *locktitle* isn't set to "yes", the *navtitle* attribute is ignored and text is retrieved from the target **yes** The navtitle in the map is used. **no** Default. The navtitle or title of the topic is used. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
format	The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. See "The format attribute" on page 482 for details on supported values.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
linking	Defines some specific linking characteristics of a topic's current location in the map. If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor. **targetonly** A topic can only be linked to and cannot link to other topics. **sourceonly** A topic cannot be linked to but can link to other topics. **normal** A topic can be linked to and can link to other topics. Use this to override the linking value of a parent topic. **none** A topic cannot be linked to or link to other topics. **-dita-use-conref-target** See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.	(targetonly | sourceonly | normal | none | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
toc	Specifies whether a topic appears in the table of contents (toc). If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor.	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?

print	Specifies whether the topic should be included in a portable document format (PDF) file. If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor.
	
	yes Include the topic in a PDF file.
	
	no Do not include the topic in a PDF file.
	
	printonly
	     Directs processing to skip the parent topic for non-print outputs of map.
	
	-dita-use-conref-target
	     See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.
		(yes | no | printonly | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No

search	Describes whether the target is available for searching. If the value is not specified locally, but it specified on an ancestor, it will inherit the value of on the ancestor. **yes** **no** **-dita-use-conref-target**	(yes | no | -dita-use-conref-target)	#IMPLIED	No
chunk	When a set of topics is transformed using a map, the chunk attribute allows multi-topic documents to be broken into smaller files, and multiple individual topics to be combined into larger combined documents. For a detailed description of the chunk attribute and its usage see the section on Chunking in Chapter 4 of the DITA 1.1 Architectural Specification.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No

Other common DITA attributes

The following attributes are not part of an entity group but are common to many elements.

Name	Description	Data Type	Default Value	Required?
class	*Not for use by authors. If an editor displays class attribute values, do not edit them.* The class attribute supports specialization. Its predefined values allow DITA tools to work correctly with ranges of related content. In a generalized DITA document the class attribute value in the generalized instance may differ from the default value for the class attribute for the element as given in the DTD or schema.	CDATA	*Default value differs for each element*	No
outputclass	Names a role that the element is playing. The role must be consistent with the basic semantic and expectations for the element. In particular, the outputclass attribute can be used for styling during output processing; HTML output will typically preserve outputclass for CSS processing.	CDATA	#IMPLIED	No
keyref	The keyref attribute is reserved for future use. The OASIS DITA Technical Committee expects to finish designing this attribute in the next release of the DITA standard.	NMTOKEN	#IMPLIED	No
xml:space	This attribute is provided on <pre>, <lines>, and on elements specialized from them. It ensures that parsers in editors and transforms respect the line-end characters that are part of the data in those elements. It is intended to be part of the default properties of these elements, and not for authors to change or delete.	(preserve)	#FIXED 'preserve'	Yes

Complex attribute definitions

Several DITA attributes require more explanation than can fit in a single table cell. Those attributes are collected here.

The conref attribute

This attribute is used to reference an ID on content that can be reused. It allows reuse of DITA components from phrases to topics, as well as maps and pieces of maps.

Full details on how to resolve the conref attribute can be found in the DITA Architectural specification. This topic primarily includes information on the actual syntax required when using the conref attribute.

Note: When using the conref attribute on an element, the content of that element is ignored. For example, if a phrase is marked up like this:

```
<ph conref="#topic/ph">Something</ph>
```

the word "Something" will be replaced by the target of the conref.

Using conref to refer to a topic

The conref attribute may be specified on a topic element to pull in another topic. For example, you could create a series of topics in a composite (ditabase) document or nested context for authoring convenience and then reference each topic individually into a new target location. During output processing, a lookup process will pull the contents of the first topic into the calling topic markup that has the conref attribute.

The conref value follows the same conventions as HTML for normal file links. To refer to target content in a different file, put the full URL of that topic before the # character.

```
Target elsewhere in the same file:
  conref="#topicid"
First topic in different file:
  conref="filename.xml"
Specific topic in different file:
  conref="filename.xml#topicid"
```

Using conref to refer to an element within a topic

The conref attribute also allows you to reuse content within a topic. For example, you could create a <note> in a topic and then reference its ID (using conref) from a <note> in another topic. This allows the content of the note to be used in both locations.

The value of conref is a URI that includes (or consists entirely of) a fragment identifier consisting a number sign ('#') followed by the ID of the topic that contains the element that is the target of the content reference, a slash ("/"), and the ID of the target element. If the URI consists of only a fragment identifier, the target element must be in the same XML document as the reference.

```
Local target:
  conref="#topicid/elementid"
In different file:
  conref="filename.xml#topicid/elementid"
```

Using conref to refer to an element within a map

Within a map, the conref attribute references an equivalent element in the same map or another map. The value of conref is a URI that includes (or consists entirely of) a fragment identifier consisting of the number sign ('#') followed by the ID of the target element. If the URI consists of only a fragment identifier, the target element must be in the same XML document as the reference.

Note that if the conref attribute is used on the map element itself, the attribute may only point to a complete map in another file or resource.

```
Local target:
  conref="#elementID"
In different file:
  conref="othermap.ditamap#elementID"
```

Using the -dita-use-conref-target value

The value -dita-use-conref-target is available on enumerated attributes, and may also be specified manually on other attributes. It indicates that when the element uses conref to pull in content, the attribute with a value of "-dita-use-conref-target" should also be pulled in from the target.

Ordinarily, when an element uses conref, any other attributes specified locally will be preserved. This feature can be used to override settings on the conref target that may not be appropriate in the new context. This causes problems when attributes are required. For example, the topichead element requires the navtitle attribute. Because the attribute is required, any topichead that uses conref must also provide a navtitle attribute – even if it is empty. Standard DITA processing rules would cause this value to override the navtitle on the target, even though the target navtitle is probably desired.

This example shows a map where the topichead element uses conref. It specifies the required navtitle attribute, as well as the toc attribute. In the resolved element, navtitle is not preserved, because it uses -dita-use-conref-target; the toc attribute is preserved using normal rules.

```
Pre-resolution:
<map><title>Conref demonstration</title>
  <topichead id="heading"
             navtitle="This is a heading"
             toc="yes"
             print="yes">
    <topicref href="topic.dita" navtitle="content"/>
  </topichead>
  <topichead conref="#heading"
             navtitle="-dita-use-conref-target"
             toc="no">
  </topichead>
</map>

Post-resolution:
<map><title>Conref demonstration</title>
  <topichead id="heading"
             navtitle="This is a heading"
             toc="yes"
             print="yes">
    <topicref href="topic.dita" navtitle="content"/>
  </topichead>
  <topichead navtitle="This is a heading"
             toc="no"
             print="yes">
    <topicref href="topic.dita" navtitle="content"/>
  </topichead>
</map>
```

More information on this and other conref rules can be found in the DITA Architectural specification.

The type attribute

The type attribute is most often used on linking elements to describe the target of a cross-reference. It is also used on the note element to describe the type of the current note, and on several other elements for varying purposes.

The descriptions for the type attribute on linking elements and on note are too long to fit in the usual attribute table, so they are included in this section; for other elements, such as audience, copyright, or object, the description can be found with the element.

Using type on a linking element

The type attribute describes the target of a cross-reference and may generate cross-reference text based on that description. Only the <xref> element can link to content below the topic level: other types of linking can target whole topics, but not parts of topics. Typically <xref> should also be limited to topic-level targets, unless the output is primarily print-oriented. Web-based referencing works best at the level of whole topics, rather than anchor locations within topics.

When the type attribute is unspecified, it should be determined by inspecting the target if possible. If the target cannot be inspected for some reason, the value should default to ″topic″.

If the type attribute is specified when referencing DITA content, it should match one of the values in the target's class attribute. For example, if type=″topic″, the link could be to a generic topic, or any specialization of topic, including concept, task, and reference. Applications may, but need not, issue a warning when the specified or inherited type attribute value does not match the target (or a specialization ancestor of the target).

Some possible values for use on the xref element and its specializations include:

fig   Indicates a link to a figure.

table   Indicates a link to a table.

li   Indicates a link to an ordered list item.

fn   Indicates a link to a footnote.

section
       ″section″ indicates a link to a section.

Other values that may be used on any linking element include:

concept, task, reference, topic
       Cross-reference to a topic type.

(no value)
       The processor should retrieve the actual type from the target if available. If the type cannot be
       determined, the default should be treated as ″topic″.

Other values can be used to indicate other types of topics or elements as targets. Processing is only
required to support the above list, or specializations of types in that list. Supporting additional types as
targets may require the creation of processing overrides.

Using type in a note element

In a note element, this defines the type of note. For example, if the note is a tip, the word **Tip** may be
used to draw the reader's attention to it. If type is set to other, the value of the othertype attribute may
be used. If you use othertype, many processors will require additional information on how to process the
value. Allowable values for the type attribute are:

note   This is just a note.

attention
       Please pay extra attention to this note.

caution
       Care is required when proceeding.

danger
       Important! Be aware of this before doing anything else.

fastpath
       This note will speed you on your way.

important
       This note is important.

remember
       Don't forget to do what this note says.

restriction
       You can't do what this note says.

tip   This is a fine little tip.

other   This is something other than a normal note.

-dita-use-conref-target
       See "Using the -dita-use-conref-target value" on page 479 for more information.

The format attribute

The format attribute identifies the format of the resource being cross referenced. The processing default for format is "dita". If no value is specified, but the attribute is specified on an ancestor within a map or within the related-links section, the value will inherit from the closest ancestor.

Using the format attribute

Possible values for this attribute include:

dita   The destination uses DITA topic markup, or markup specialized from a DITA topic. Unless otherwise specified, the corresponding default type will be treated as "topic."

html   The format of the linked-to resource is HTML or XHTML.

pdf   The format of the linked-to resource is PDF (opens a new window).

ditamap
> The linked-to resource is a DITA map. It represents a referenced hierarchy at a position within referencing hierarchy, and a referenced relationship table included outside the referencing hierarchy

(no value)
> Processors default to "dita"

For other formats, you can use the file extension without the "." (for example, in a link to file "readme.txt", use "txt" as the value).

The role attribute

The role attribute defines the role the target topic plays in relationship with the current topic. For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This structure could be used to sort and classify links at display time.

Supported values

Allowable values for the role attribute are:

parent Indicates a link to a topic that is a parent of the current topic.

child   Indicates a link to a direct child such as a directly nested or dependent topic.

sibling
> Iindicates a link between two children of the same parent topic.

friend Indicates a link to a similar topic that is not necessarily part of the same hierarchy.

next   Indicates a link to the next topic in a sequence.

previous
> Indicates a link to the previous topic in a sequence.

cousin Indicates a link to another topic in the same hierarchy that is not a parent, child, sibling, next, or previous.

ancestor
> Indicates a link to a topic above the parent topic.

descendent
> Indicates a link to a topic below a child topic.

sample
> Deprecated.

        31 May 2007

external

Deprecated--use the scope=″external″ attribute to indicate external links..

other Indicates any other kind of relationship or role. Enter that role as the value for the otherrole attribute.

-dita-use-conref-target

See ″Using the -dita-use-conref-target value″ on page 479 for more information.

Chapter 26. Alphabetical listing of DITA elements

This section provides links to every element in the guide, listed in alphabetical order.

Index

Special characters

-dita-use-conref-target attribute
  value 479
%display-atts 465
%global-atts 466
%id-atts 467
%localization-atts 470
%rel-atts 467
%select-atts 468
%topicref-atts 474
%topicref-atts-no-toc 474
%univ-atts 471

A

abbreviation list 322
abbrevlist 322
abstract 9, 329
    Bookmap elements
        abstract 329
addressdetails
    xNAL elements
        addressdetails 417
administrativearea 418
align attribute 120, 121, 127
    image 100
alt (alternate text) 101
alt attribute 101
amendments 324
anchor 305
anchorref attribute 304, 322
apiname 221
appendix 325
    Bookmap elements
        appendix 325
application programming interface
  name 221
appname attribute 160
approved 358
archive attribute 104
area 291
Attribute specialization 6, 21, 25, 39, 44,
    49, 70, 122, 129, 237, 240, 243, 247, 253,
    256, 259, 261, 262, 264, 267, 468, 469, 472
audience 136
audience attribute 45, 50, 238, 241, 244,
    248, 254, 257, 260, 262, 265, 268, 469, 472
author 138
author attribute 181
authorinformation 416

B

b (bold) 213
backmatter 327
base attribute 6, 21, 25, 39, 44, 49, 70,
    122, 129, 237, 240, 243, 247, 253, 256,
    259, 262, 264, 267, 469, 472
bibliolist 328
body 13

Body elements 71, 87
    alt 101
    cite 110
    dd 94
    ddhd 91
    desc 97
    dlentry 92
    dlhead 89
    dt 93
    dthd 90
    fig 95
    figgroup 97
    image 98
    keyword 75
    li (list item) 83
    lines 109
    lq 111
    note 72
    object 102
    ol 80
    p 71
    param 106
    ph 74
    pre 108
    q 113
    sl (simple list) 84
    sli (simple list item) 86
    ul (unordered list) 82
    xref (cross reference) 77
bold (b) 213
bookchangehistory 360
bookevent 362
bookeventtype 364
bookid 366
booklibrary 331
booklist 331
booklists 333
bookmap 321
Bookmap elements
    abbrevlist 322
    abstract 329
    amendments 324
    appendix 325
    approved 358
    backmatter 327
    bibliolist 328
    bookchangehistory 360
    bookevent 362
    bookeventtype 364
    bookid 366
    booklibrary 331
    booklist 331
    booklists 333
    bookmap 321
    bookmeta 357
    booknumber 368
    bookowner 370
    bookpartno 372
    bookrestriction 374
    bookrights 376
    booktitle 333

Bookmap elements *(continued)*
    booktitlealt 334
    chapter 334
    colophon 336
    completed 378
    copyrfirst 379
    copyrlast 381
    day 383
    dedication 338
    draftintro 339
    edited 383
    edition 385
    figurelist 341
    frontmatter 342
    glossarylist 343
    indexlist 344
    isbn 387
    mainbooktitle 346
    maintainer 389
    month 391
    notices 346
    organization 392
    part 348
    person 394
    preface 350
    printlocation 396
    published 398
    publisherinformation 400
    publishtype 401
    reviewed 403
    revisionid 405
    started 405
    summary 406
    tablelist 351
    tested 407
    toc 353
    trademarklist 354
    volume 409
    year 411
bookmeta 357
booknumber 368
bookowner 370
bookpartno 372
bookrestriction 374
bookrights 376
booktitle 333
booktitlealt 334
boolean (logical yes/no) 210
brand 140

C

callout attribute 184, 250
category 141
chapter 334
char attribute 122, 128
charoff attribute 122, 128
chdesc (choice option description) 58
chdeschd (choice description alternate
  heading) 55
chhead (choicetable heading) 53

489

31 May 2007

choice   60
choices   59
choicetable   52
choption (choice option)   57
choptionhd (choice option alternate
   heading)   54
chrow (choice table row)   56
chunk attribute   477
cite   110
class attribute   478
classid attribute   104
cmd (step command)   46
cmdname (command name)   273
code phrase (codeph)   224
codebase attribute   104
codeblock   222
codeph (code phrase)   224
codetype attribute   104
collection-type attribute   170, 173, 475
colname attribute   121, 127
colnum attribute   121
colophon   336
cols attribute   119
colsep attribute   117, 119, 121, 127
colspec   120
colwidth attribute   121
command name (cmdname)   273
Commonly referenced attribute
   descriptions   465
      %display-atts   465
      %global-atts   466
      %id-atts   467
      %localization-atts   470
      %rel-atts   467
      %select-atts   468
      %topicref-atts   474
      %topicref-atts-no-toc   474
      %univ-atts   471
compact attribute   81, 83, 86, 89, 230
completed   378
component   142
Composite topics   179
conbody (concept body)   20
concept   19
Concept elements   19
      conbody   20
      concept   19
conref attribute
      Reference to a map fragment   479
      Reference to a topic   479
      Reference to a topic fragment   479
contactnumber
   xNAL elements
      contactnumber   419
contactnumbers
   xNAL elements
      contactnumbers   421
content attribute   153
context   40
coords   292
copy-to attribute   315, 323, 325, 326, 329,
   330, 332, 336, 337, 339, 340, 342, 344,
   345, 347, 349, 351, 352, 354, 355
copyrfirst   379
copyrholder   144
copyright   143
copyrlast   381

copyryear   145
country
   xNAL elements
      country   423
created   146
critdates (critical dates)   148
critical dates (critdates)   148
cross reference (xref)   77

D

data attribute   104
data element   194
data-about   191
date attribute   147
day   383
dd (definition description)   94
ddhd (definition descriptions
   heading)   91
declare attribute   104
dedication   338
definition description (dd)   94
definition list (dl)   87
definition list entry (dlentry)   92
definition list heading (dlhead)   89
definition term (dt)   93
delim (syntax delimiter)   261
desc (description)   97
description (desc)   97
dir attribute   181, 206, 293, 295, 471, 474
disposition attribute   181
dita   179
DITA Language Reference overview   1
DITAArchVersion attribute   4, 20, 24, 38,
   68, 304, 322
Ditabase document type   179
DITAVAL elements   459
      endflag   464
      prop   460
      revprop   462
      startflag   463
      style-conflict   459
      val (root element)   459
dl (definition list)   87
dlentry (definition list entry)   92
dlhead (definition list heading)   89
domains attribute   4, 20, 24, 38, 68, 305,
   322
Domains elements
      indexing domain   297
      mapgroup domain   317
      programming domain   221
      software domain   269
      typographic domain   213
      user interface domain   281
      utilities domain   289
      xNAL domain   413
draft-comment   180
draftintro   339
dt (definition term)   93
dthd (definition terms heading)   90
duplicates attribute   170, 174

E

edited   383
edition   385
emailaddress   423
emailaddresses   426
entry   126
example   15
expanse attribute   466
experiencelevel attribute   138
expiry attribute   147, 162

F

featnum (product feature number)   148
feature number (featnum)   148
fig (figure)   95
figgroup   97
figure (fig)   95
figurelist   341
filepath   276
Filtering   459
firstname
   xNAL elements
      firstname   428
Flagging   459
fn (footnote)   182
footnote (fn)   182
foreign   198
format attribute   17, 80, 168, 171, 174,
   193, 197, 359, 361, 363, 365, 367, 369,
   371, 373, 375, 377, 380, 382, 384, 386,
   388, 390, 393, 395, 397, 399, 402, 404,
   408, 410, 420, 422, 425, 427, 429, 431,
   433, 435, 438, 440, 443, 446, 448, 451,
   454, 456, 476
fragment (syntax fragment)   245
fragref (fragment reference)   246
frame attribute   117, 465
frontmatter   342

G

generationidentifier
   xNAL elements
      generationidentifier   430
glossarylist   343
glossdef   68
glossentry   67
Glossentry elements   67
      glossdef   68
      glossentry   67
      glossterm   69
glossterm   69
golive attribute   147, 162
groupchoice (group choice)   239
groupcomp (group composite)   242
groupseq (group sequence)   236

H

height attribute   100, 105
honorific
   xNAL elements
      honorific   432

view attribute   154
volume   409
vrm   165
vrmlist   164

W

width attribute   100, 105
wintitle (window title)   282

X

xml:lang attribute   181, 206, 293, 295,
   471, 474
xml:space attribute   478
xNAL elements   413
   administrativearea   418
   authorinformation   416
   emailaddress   423
   emailaddresses   426
   locality   436
   localityname   437

xNAL elements *(continued)*
   postalcode   451
   thoroughfare   452
   url   453
xref (cross reference)   77

Y

year   411
year attribute   146